



Groupware
User Guide



Groupware: User Guide

Publication date Thursday, 30. December 2021 Version 7.10.5

Copyright © OX Software GmbH. This document is the intellectual property of OX Software GmbH

This document may be copied in whole or in part, provided that each copy contains this copyright notice. The information contained in this book was compiled with the utmost care. Nevertheless, erroneous statements cannot be excluded altogether. OX Software GmbH, the authors and the translators are not liable for possible errors and their consequences. The names of software and hardware used in this book may be registered trademarks; they are used without warranty of free usability. OX Software GmbH generally follows the spelling conventions of the manufacturers. The reproduction of brand names, trade names, logos, etc. in this book (even without special markings) does not justify the assumption that such names can be considered free (for the purposes of trademark and brand name regulations).

Table of Contents

1 About this Documentation	11
1.1 Target Groups, Contents	12
1.2 Terminology	13
2 First Steps	15
2.1 Groupware Definition	16
2.2 Signing in, Signing out	18
2.3 Changing the Password	19
2.4 General Description of the User Interface	20
2.4.1 The menu bar	21
2.4.2 App Launcher	22
2.4.3 The search bar	23
2.4.4 The tool bar	24
2.4.5 The folder view	25
2.4.6 The display area	26
2.4.7 The pop-up	27
2.4.8 The notification area	28
2.4.9 The editing window	29
2.5 Keyboard Input	30
2.5.1 Keys and key combinations	31
2.5.2 Interacting with the user interface via keyboard	32
2.5.3 Use cases	33
2.6 Usage on Mobile Devices	34
3 Basic Settings	35
3.1 Customising the basic settings	36
3.2 Changing the Regional Settings	38
3.3 Changing Personal Contact Data	39
3.4 Receiving Notifications	40
3.5 Manually Installing Local Apps	42
3.6 Using a Wizard to Set Up Local Apps	43
3.7 Setting up and Configuring the Zoom Integration	44
3.8 Setting the presence status	46
4 Portal	47
4.1 The Portal Components	48
4.1.1 Signed in as	49
4.1.2 Customise this page button	49
4.1.3 Add widget button	49
4.1.4 Appointments widget	49
4.1.5 Inbox widget	49
4.1.6 Tasks widget	49
4.1.7 Recently changed files widget	49
4.1.8 User data widget	50
4.1.9 Quota widget	50
4.1.10 News widgets	50

4.1.11 Widgets with news from your social networks	50
4.1.12 Widgets with information about Drive apps	50
4.2 Customising the Portal	51
4.2.1 Changing the widgets' order	52
4.2.2 Removing Portal widgets	52
4.2.3 Adding Portal widgets	52
4.2.4 Adding a Portal widget for social networks	52
4.2.5 Creating a XING account	53
4.3 Portal Settings	54
5 E-Mail	55
5.1 The E-Mail Components	56
5.1.1 The E-Mail tool bar	57
5.1.2 The E-Mail folder view	58
5.1.3 The E-Mail categories bar	59
5.1.4 The E-Mail display area	59
5.1.5 The E-Mail list	60
5.1.6 The E-Mail detail view	61
5.1.7 The E-Mail pop-up	62
5.1.8 The E-Mail editing window	63
5.2 Displaying email messages	64
5.3 Viewing or Saving email Attachments	65
5.4 Sending email messages	66
5.4.1 Sending a new email	67
5.4.2 Selecting contacts from an address book	68
5.4.3 Selecting sender address	69
5.4.4 Adding attachments	70
5.4.5 Sending attachments as a link	71
5.4.6 Using signatures	71
5.4.7 Replying to email messages	73
5.4.8 Forwarding E-Mail messages	73
5.4.9 Automatically forwarding email messages	74
5.4.10 Sending an E-Mail to appointment participants	74
5.4.11 Sending a vacation notice automatically	75
5.5 Calling the Sender or Another Recipient	76
5.6 Adding E-Mail Folders	77
5.7 Managing E-Mail messages	78
5.7.1 Working with tabs	79
5.7.2 Moving or copying E-Mail messages	80
5.7.3 Marking email messages as read or unread	80
5.7.4 Collecting addresses	81
5.7.5 Categorising E-Mail messages	81
5.7.6 Showing the email source	82
5.7.7 Using E-Mail drafts	82
5.7.8 Creating E-Mail reminders	83
5.7.9 Adding an E-Mail to the Portal	83
5.7.10 Saving email messages	83
5.7.11 Importing email messages	84
5.7.12 Printing email messages	84
5.7.13 Archiving E-Mail messages	85
5.7.14 Deleting E-Mail messages	86
5.7.15 Cleaning up E-Mail folders	87
5.7.16 Using Unified Mail	88

5.8 Using E-Mail Filters	89
5.8.1 Creating new rules	90
5.8.2 Adding a condition	91
5.8.3 Adding an action	92
5.8.4 Creating a new rule when moving	92
5.8.5 Creating new rules for the subject and the sender	93
5.8.6 Changing a rule	93
5.8.7 Applying a rule to existing E-Mail messages	94
5.9 Searching for E-Mail Messages	95
5.10 Adding E-Mail Accounts	97
5.11 Email Settings	98
5.11.1 Settings for receiving E-Mail messages.	99
5.11.2 Settings for composing E-Mail messages	100

6 Address Book 101

6.1 The Address Book Components	102
6.1.1 The Address Book tool bar	103
6.1.2 The Address Book folder view	104
6.1.3 The Address Book navigation bar	104
6.1.4 The Address Book display area	105
6.1.5 The Address Book list	105
6.1.6 The Address Book detail view	106
6.1.7 The contact editing window	107
6.1.8 The distribution list editing window	108
6.2 Displaying contacts	109
6.3 Viewing or Saving Contact Attachments	110
6.4 Displaying Contacts in the Halo View	111
6.5 Adding Contacts	112
6.5.1 Creating a new contact	113
6.5.2 Adding attachments	114
6.5.3 Adding a contact from a vCard attachment	114
6.6 Adding Distribution Lists	115
6.6.1 Creating new distribution lists	116
6.6.2 Saving E-Mail recipients as distribution list	117
6.6.3 Creating a distribution list from the list of participants	117
6.7 Editing Contacts or Distribution Lists	118
6.8 Calling Contacts	119
6.9 Adding Address Books	120
6.9.1 Adding address books	121
6.9.2 Subscribing to external address books	121
6.9.3 Refreshing and managing subscribed address books	122
6.9.4 Subscribing to public and shared address books	123
6.10 Managing Contacts	124
6.10.1 Sending Email Messages from within an address book	125
6.10.2 Inviting contacts to an appointment	125
6.10.3 Moving or copying contacts	125
6.10.4 Sending contacts as vCard	125
6.10.5 Adding contacts as XING contacts	126
6.10.6 Inviting contacts to XING	126
6.10.7 Importing contacts	127
6.10.8 Exporting contacts	128

6.10.9 Printing contacts	128
6.10.10 Deleting contacts	129
6.11 Searching for Contacts	130
6.12 Address Book Settings	131

7 Calendar 133

7.1 The Calendar Components	134
7.1.1 The Calendar tool bar	135
7.1.2 The mini calendar	136
7.1.3 The Calendar folder view	137
7.1.4 The Calendar display area	137
7.1.5 Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year calendar view.	138
7.1.6 The date picker	139
7.1.7 The Calendar pop-up	140
7.1.8 The Calendar list	140
7.1.9 The Calendar detail view	141
7.1.10 The scheduling view	142
7.1.11 The appointment editing window	143
7.2 Viewing Appointments	144
7.2.1 Displaying appointments in the calendar view	145
7.2.2 Displaying multiple time zones	146
7.2.3 How are appointments displayed in a calendar view?	147
7.2.4 Displaying appointments in the list view	148
7.3 Viewing or Saving Appointment Attachments	149
7.4 Creating Appointments	150
7.4.1 Creating new appointments	151
7.4.2 Using the date picker	152
7.4.3 Scheduling audio/video conferences	153
7.4.4 Setting recurring appointments	154
7.4.5 Setting an appointment's display	155
7.4.6 Using appointment reminders	155
7.4.7 Adding participants or resources	156
7.4.8 Adding attachments	157
7.4.9 Using the scheduling view	158
7.4.10 Creating a follow-up appointment	158
7.4.11 Inviting participants to a new appointment	159
7.4.12 Inviting E-Mail recipients to new appointments	160
7.4.13 Creating appointments from iCal attachments	160
7.4.14 Resolving appointment conflicts	161
7.5 Answering Appointment Invitations	162
7.6 Editing appointments	163
7.7 Calling Appointment Participants	164
7.8 Adding Calendars	165
7.8.1 Adding personal calendars	166
7.8.2 Subscribing to external calendars	167
7.8.3 Importing calendars from files	168
7.8.4 Subscribing to public and shared calendars	168
7.9 Managing Appointments	169
7.9.1 Changing the appointment confirmation or status	170
7.9.2 Changing appointment reminders	171
7.9.3 Changing the organiser	171
7.9.4 Managing favourite time zones	172

7.9.5 Using calendar colours	172
7.9.6 Moving appointments to another calendar	172
7.9.7 Importing appointments	172
7.9.8 Exporting appointments	174
7.9.9 Printing appointments	175
7.9.10 Deleting appointments	176
7.10 Searching for Appointments	177
7.11 Managing Groups	178
7.12 Managing Resources	179
7.13 Calendar Settings	180
8 Tasks	183
8.1 The Tasks Components	184
8.1.1 The Tasks tool bar	185
8.1.2 The Tasks folder view	186
8.1.3 The Tasks display area	186
8.1.4 The Tasks list	187
8.1.5 The Tasks detail view	188
8.1.6 The editing window	189
8.2 Viewing Tasks	190
8.3 Viewing or Saving Task Attachments	191
8.4 Creating Tasks	192
8.4.1 Creating new tasks	193
8.4.2 Creating recurring tasks	194
8.4.3 Adding participants to a task	194
8.4.4 Adding attachments	194
8.5 Answering Task Invitations	195
8.6 Editing tasks	196
8.7 Calling Task Participants	197
8.8 Adding Task Folders	198
8.8.1 Adding personal task folders	199
8.8.2 Subscribing to public and shared task folders	199
8.9 Managing tasks	200
8.9.1 Marking tasks as done	201
8.9.2 Changing a task's due date	201
8.9.3 Moving tasks to another folder	201
8.9.4 Changing tasks confirmations	202
8.9.5 Importing tasks	202
8.9.6 Exporting tasks	203
8.9.7 Printing tasks	203
8.9.8 Deleting tasks	203
8.10 Searching for Tasks	204
8.11 Task Settings	205
9 Drive	207
9.1 The Drive Components	208
9.1.1 The Drive tool bar	209
9.1.2 The Drive folder view	210
9.1.3 The Drive navigation bar	211
9.1.4 The Drive display area	212

9.1.5 The file details	213
9.1.6 The viewer	214
9.2 Viewing files	215
9.2.1 Displaying files in the viewer	216
9.2.2 Displaying E-Mail attachments in Drive	217
9.2.3 Holding a presentation	217
9.3 Downloading Files or Folder Contents	219
9.4 Driveadd folder	220
9.4.1 Drive: Creating Folders	221
9.4.2 Subscribing to public and shared Drive folders	221
9.5 Uploading Files or Folders	222
9.6 Creating or Editing Text Files	223
9.7 Organising Files and Drive Folders	224
9.7.1 Sending files as E-Mail attachments	225
9.7.2 Editing file names	225
9.7.3 Creating or editing descriptions	226
9.7.4 Moving files or Drive folders	226
9.7.5 Copying files	227
9.7.6 Saving files as PDF	227
9.7.7 Adding files to the Portal	228
9.7.8 Adding files or Drive folders to Favourites	228
9.7.9 Deleting files or Drive folders	229
9.7.10 Locking or unlocking files	230
9.7.11 Working with versions	231
9.8 Searching for Files	232
9.9 Accessing Files with WebDAV	233
9.9.1 Setting up WebDAV under Linux	234
9.9.2 Setting up WebDAV under Windows	234
9.10 Adding storage accounts	235
9.11 DriveSettings	236
10 Data Organisation and Shares	237
10.1 Managing Data with Folders	238
10.1.1 What are folder types?	239
10.1.2 What is the purpose of permissions?	240
10.1.3 Navigating within the folder structure	241
10.1.4 Hiding folders	242
10.1.5 Adding folders to favourites	243
10.1.6 Renaming folders	243
10.1.7 Moving folders	244
10.1.8 Deleting folders	244
10.2 Sharing Data	245
10.2.1 Sharing data	246
10.2.2 Editing shares	247
10.2.3 Resending an invitation	249
10.2.4 Removing shares	250
10.2.5 Viewing or editing shares in the Drive app	251
10.2.6 Subscribing to shared or personal E-Mail folders	252
10.2.7 Accessing other users' shares	253
10.2.8 Which permissions can be used?	254
10.2.9 Use cases for permissions	256

10.3 Managing Accounts	258
10.3.1 Editing the primary E-Mail account	259
10.3.2 Viewing, editing, deleting accounts	260
10.4 Downloading Personal Data	261
11 Data Security	263
11.1 Signing out Automatically	264
11.2 Externally Linked Images in E-Mail Messages	265
11.3 Showing the E-Mail Authenticity	266
11.4 Using a Whitelist	267
11.5 Display or sign out from active clients	268
11.6 Using Additional Passwords for Applications	269
11.7 Multi-Factor Authentication	270
11.7.1 Setting up verification methods	271
11.7.2 Verifying a login by using an authenticator app	273
11.7.3 Verifying the login with a security key	273
11.7.4 Verifying the login with an SMS code	274
11.7.5 Recovering the verification	275
11.7.6 Managing verification methods	276
12 Encrypting Data with Guard	277
12.1 Setting up Guard	278
12.2 Encrypting E-Mail Conversations	279
12.2.1 Reading encrypted E-Mail messages	279
12.2.2 Sending encrypted E-Mail messages	280
12.2.3 How can external recipients read an encrypted E-Mail?	281
12.2.4 Encrypting incoming E-Mail messages by using a filter rule	281
12.3 Encrypting E-Mail Conversations with Autocrypt	282
12.3.1 Importing Autocrypt keys	283
12.3.2 Managing Autocrypt keys	284
12.3.3 Transferring Autocrypt keys to other clients	285
12.4 Encrypting or Decrypting Files	286
12.4.1 Encrypting files	286
12.4.2 Uploading files securely by using encryption	287
12.4.3 Opening encrypted files	287
12.4.4 Downloading encrypted files	287
12.4.5 Decrypting files	289
12.5 Encrypting Office Documents	290
12.5.1 Creating new encrypted documents	291
12.5.2 Saving selected documents in an encrypted format	292
12.5.3 Opening an encrypted document	293
12.6 Signing Out from Guard	294
12.7 GuardSettings	295
12.7.1 Password management	297
12.7.2 Managing your own keys	299
12.7.3 Managing public keys	301
Index	303

1 About this Documentation

The following information will help you make better use of the documentation.

- [Target Groups, Contents \(p. 12\)](#)
- [Terminology \(p. 13\)](#)

1.1 Target Groups, Contents

This documentation is addressed to the end user.

This documentation describes working with a typical groupware installation and configuration. The installed version and the configuration of your groupware might differ from what is described here.

If this documentation contains descriptions of functions that are not available in your installation, please contact your administrator or host. As the groupware's software has a modularised structure consisting of individual applications, it is possible to purchase additional applications or functions through upgrades.

The contents of this documentation are also available in the on-line help.

1.2 Terminology

Account	<p>An account or an user account is an access permission to a computer system. Account examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ groupware account▪ GMail account▪ DropBox account▪ Facebook account <p>To get access, a user has to log in with the user name and the password. Based on the account, the computer system identifies the single users. This allows assigning specific properties to a user, like access permissions or settings.</p> <p>Related topics: Managing Accounts (p. 258)</p>
App	<p>An application is a groupware component that provides certain functions. Example: With the E-Mail application you can send, receive and organise E-Mail messages.</p>
Distribution list	<p>A distribution list consists of a distribution list name and a number of E-Mail addresses of internal users or external partners. You can create and edit your own distribution lists. Other users cannot see your distribution lists. Distribution lists can be used as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ send an E-Mail to multiple contacts▪ add internal or external participants to an appointment or a task▪ grant permissions to multiple users or guests by inviting them to a share <p>Depending on the configuration, specific distribution lists are predefined for all users.</p> <p>Related topics: Adding Distribution Lists (p. 115)</p>
Domain	<p>A domain is the address used to open a page on the Internet. Example: <i>www.example.com</i>. A domain is often also referred to as web address or Internet address.</p> <p>Related topics: Using a Whitelist (p. 267)</p>
E-Mail thread	<p>An E-Mail thread is an E-Mail conversation The E-Mail thread includes the original E-Mail and all replies. All E-Mail messages in an E-Mail thread have the same subject. The current E-Mail corresponds to the last reply.</p> <p>Related topics: The E-Mail list (p. 60)</p>
Elements	<p>Elements of the user interface. Example: windows, labels, buttons.</p> <p>Related topics: General Description of the User Interface (p. 20)</p>
External participant	<p>A person that is not an internal groupware user but that participates in an appointment or task.</p>
Folders	<p>Folders contain app specific objects. In some apps, folders can also include sub-folders. Some folders are preset, other folders can be set up by the user. Folder examples: E-Mail folder, address book, calendar, task folders, Drive folders</p> <p>Related topics: Managing Data with Folders (p. 238)</p>
Global address book	<p>Contains the contact data for all internal users. The users can edit their own personal data in the global address book.</p>
Group	<p>A group consists of a group name and a number of internal users. Groups can be used as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ add to an appointment or task▪ grant permissions by inviting to a share

	<p>Depending on the configuration, specific groups are predefined. Depending on the groupware configuration, users can get the permission to create additional groups.</p> <p>Related topics: Managing Groups (p. 178)</p>
Groupware	<p>The software described in this documentation.</p>
Guest	<p>A person who received an invitation to a share by another user or has been added to an appointment or task as an external participant. Each guest user belongs to the <i>Guests</i> group. This group cannot be changed or deleted.</p>
Internal E-Mail account	<p>Your Groupware E-Mail account You will automatically get this account. You cannot delete this account.</p>
Objects	<p>Objects are groupware data that are created and organised by the user. Examples: E-Mail messages, contacts, appointments, tasks, documents, files, folders, address books, calendars</p>
Participant	<p>A user invited to an appointment or task.</p>
Resource	<p>Resources are rooms or devices that can be added to an appointment. A resource consists of a resource name, an E-Mail address and an optional description.</p> <p>You can only add resources that are not used for other appointments. Depending on the configuration, specific resources are predefined. Depending on the configuration, users can get the permission to create additional resources.</p> <p>Related topics: Managing Resources (p. 179)</p>
Session	<p>A session is a connection between a client, e.g. a browser, an E-Mail client or a smartphone app and a server, e.g. the groupware server. A session starts with the login and ends with the logout.</p> <p>Related topics: Display or sign out from active clients (p. 268)</p>
Tabs	<p>Tabs provide an easy and simple way of keeping the <i>Inbox</i> folder neat. With tabs, incoming E-Mail messages are saved separated by sender in the <i>Inbox</i> folder. Depending on the configuration, specific tabs are predefined. You can set additional tabs according to your needs.</p> <p>Tabs can only be used in the <i>Inbox</i> folder. If you need additional storage options, use the folder view to create E-Mail folders.</p> <p>Related topics: Working with tabs (p. 79)</p>
User	<p>A person working with the groupware. Each user has a username and a password. Each groupware user belongs to the <i>default group</i>. Those users are also called internal users.</p>
User interface	<p>This refers to the groupware user interface. The user interface consists of individual elements.</p> <p>Related topics: General Description of the User Interface (p. 20)</p>
Whitelist	<p>A whitelist is a list of domain names or E-Mail addresses that you trust.</p> <p>Related topics: Using a Whitelist (p. 267)</p>

2 First Steps

You should have a look at these topics before starting to work with the groupware:

- [Groupware Definition \(p. 16\)](#)
- [Signing in, Signing out \(p. 18\)](#)
- [Changing the Password \(p. 19\)](#)
- [General Description of the User Interface \(p. 20\)](#)

You can also have a look at these topics:

- [Keyboard Input \(p. 30\)](#)
- [Usage on Mobile Devices \(p. 34\)](#)

2.1 Groupware Definition

Learn which applications are part of the groupware. Get an initial insight into the tasks that can be accomplished using the applications.

Portal

Your information center for scheduled appointments, new E-Mail messages or messages from messaging platforms.

- Get an overview of current appointments and new E-Mail messages.
- Read current messages from your favorite messaging source.
- Follow news from your social networks.

Learn more: [Portal \(p. 47\)](#)

E-Mail

Send, receive and organise your E-Mail messages.

- Besides your internal E-Mail account use external E-Mail accounts that you have set up with other providers.
- Find E-Mail messages with the help of several search criteria. Follow E-Mail threads.
- Use E-Mail folders to organize your E-Mail messages. Co-operate with your team by sharing selected E-Mail folders.
- Use the other applications by creating a new contact from an E-Mail address or creating a new appointment from an iCal attachment.

Learn more: [E-Mail \(p. 55\)](#)

Address Book

Organise and maintain your private and business contacts.

- Use the global address book to communicate with internal participants. Create personal address books to keep an overview of your contacts.
- Use address books to organise your contacts. Co-operate with your team by sharing selected address books.
- Use the contacts from your social networks. This enables you to use the groupware as a central collection point for your contacts.
- Work with external partners by sending contact data in vCard format or sharing address books.

Learn more: [Address Book \(p. 101\)](#)

Calendar

Keep an overview of your private and business appointments.

- Use individual or recurring appointments to schedule meetings and activities.
- Use calendars to organise appointments. Specify the team members who can access selected calendars.
- Use the team view functions to find windows of free time and to check whether resources like rooms or devices are available.
- When scheduling appointments with external participants the iCal functions ensure automated invitation management.

Learn more: [Calendar \(p. 133\)](#)

Tasks

Schedule and organise your activities.

- Use the due date to organise your tasks. Use the reminder for tasks that are due.
- Manage your team by delegating selected tasks to others.
- Use the tasks folders to organise your tasks. Specify team members who can access selected tasks.
- Use the recurring tasks functions to keep track of recurring activities.

Learn more: [Tasks \(p. 183\)](#)

Drive

Use the file store to centrally manage information or to share information with others.

- Save any files, notes or Internet links. Give your team read or write access to selected document folders.
- Create and edit simple text files.
- Send individual files as E-Mail attachments or links.
- Provide information to external partners by sharing document folders.

Learn more: [Drive \(p. 207\)](#)

Folders and permissions

Folders and their permissions play an important role in exchanging information with other users. Each groupware object is saved in a specific folder. The folder view helps to manage folders and permissions.

- Use personal folders for sorting your E-Mail messages, contacts, appointments, tasks, and Infostore items.
- Support your team by sharing certain folders with read or write access.
- Benefit from the information of others by using objects in public or shared folders for your work.

Learn more: [Data Organisation and Shares \(p. 237\)](#)

2.2 Signing in, Signing out

In order to sign in you need to know the server address, your username and your password. This information is provided by your administrator or host.

How to sign in to the server:

1. Open a web browser.
2. Enter the server address in the address bar. The login window will be displayed.
3. Enter your username and your password. Note that they are case-sensitive.
4. To save your credentials locally, enable **Stay signed in**.

Warning: Only use this option if this machine is used solely by you. When signing in to a public machine do not use this option.

5. Click on **Sign in**.

Note: If you enter the wrong username or password an error message is displayed. Enter the correct information.

If you set up two-factor authentication, an additional page is displayed. Enter the authentication data on this page.

How to sign out:

1. Click the **My account** icon on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Sign out**. The login window will be displayed.
2. If anyone else has access to the machine, close the browser.

Warning: If you close the web browser tab without signing out, you stay signed in to the server. If another person enters the server address, this person is automatically signed in with your username and has full access to your data.


Always sign out from the server when you are finished working.

Warning: Your credentials might stay in the system memory as long as your browser is open. This can be a security risk. Close the browser to remove your credentials from the system memory.

2.3 Changing the Password

Note: Depending on the configuration, the steps for changing the password might differ from this instruction. In this case, contact your administrator or host.

How to change your password:

1. Click the **All Applications** icon  in the menu bar. Click on **Portal** in the App Launcher.
2. If the *User data* widget is not displayed, click on **Add widget** on the upper right side. Click on **User data**.
Click on **My password** in the *User data* widget.
3. Change your password.

User interface:

[User data widget \(p. 50\)](#)

2.4 General Description of the User Interface

Learn which basic [elements](#) are part of the [user interface](#) and where they are located. Detailed descriptions of the app specific user interface elements can be found in the app specific topics. Links to the app specific topics can be found at the end of each following topic.

The user interface includes the following elements:

- [The menu bar \(p. 21\)](#)
- [App Launcher \(p. 22\)](#)
- [The search bar \(p. 23\)](#)
- [The folder view \(p. 25\)](#)
- [The tool bar \(p. 24\)](#)
- [The display area \(p. 26\)](#)
- [The pop-up \(p. 27\)](#)
- [The notification area \(p. 28\)](#)
- [The editing window \(p. 29\)](#)

2.4.1 The menu bar

Note: The following is a schematic representation.



Content

- **All Applications** icon . Opens a menu with icons for launching an app.
 - Depending on the configuration: Quick launch icons for launching frequently used apps. The context menu allows you to define the apps that should be displayed as quick launch icons.
- **Notifications** icon . The icon is displayed when receiving a new notification. The icon notifies you of the number of new notifications e.g., new appointment invitations. If clicking the icon, the notification area opens.
- Depending on the configuration: **Call history** icon . Opens the call history that shows all calls or missed calls. If clicking on an entry, the window for calling this contact will be opened.
- **Refresh** icon . Reloads objects from the server. Irrespective of this function, objects are refreshed in regular intervals.
- **Help** icon . Opens a menu with additional functions:
 - **Help**. Opens a context related help page. Depending on the current app, the respective help page from the online help is displayed.
Tip: Some windows also include the help icon. If clicking on it, the respective help for the window context is displayed.
 - Giving feedback about the groupware
 - Depending on the configuration, there are several guided tours that help you get started with the groupware.
 - **About**. Shows information about the groupware.
- **Settings** icon . Opens a menu with additional functions:
 - Customise settings.
 - Depending on the configuration: **Connect your Device**. Launches a wizard for setting up local apps that you can use to access your groupware data.
- **My account** icon. Your profile picture is used for the icon. If clicking on it, a menu with several functions opens:
 - **Download personal data**. Opens a window where you can adjust your personal contact data in the global address book.
 - **Sign out**. Signs you out from the groupware.

Depending on the configuration, additional menu entries might be available.

Related topics:

[App Launcher \(p. 22\)](#)

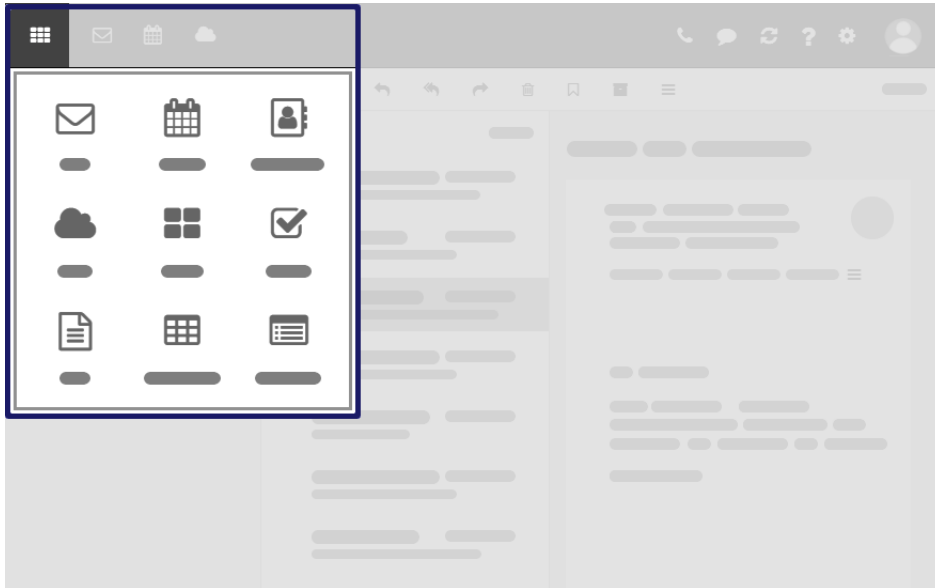
[The notification area \(p. 28\)](#)

[Using a Wizard to Set Up Local Apps \(p. 43\)](#)

[Changing Personal Contact Data \(p. 39\)](#)

2.4.2 App Launcher

Note: The following is a schematic representation.



In order to show the app launcher, click the **All Applications** icon  in the menu bar.

Content

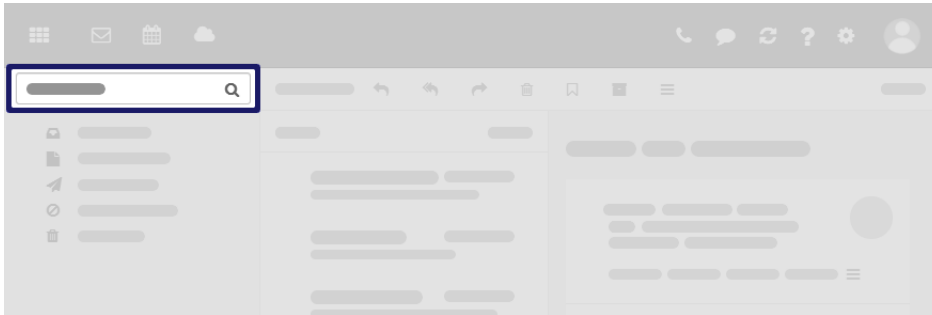
- Contains squares for launching the apps. Depending on the configuration, the number of squares can vary.

Related topics:

[The menu bar \(p. 21\)](#)




2.4.3 The search bar

Note: The search bar contents are different for each app. The following is a schematic representation.



In order to display the search bar, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **Folder view**.

Content

- Input field for the search term
As soon as clicking into the input field, additional functions are displayed in the search bar.
- **Cancel search** icon . Finishes the search.
- Functions for selecting the folder to be searched
- **Options** icon . Opens a menu with app specific parameters for controlling the search. Depending on the app, additional drop-downs for controlling the search are available.
- **Online help** icon . Displays context-sensitive help.

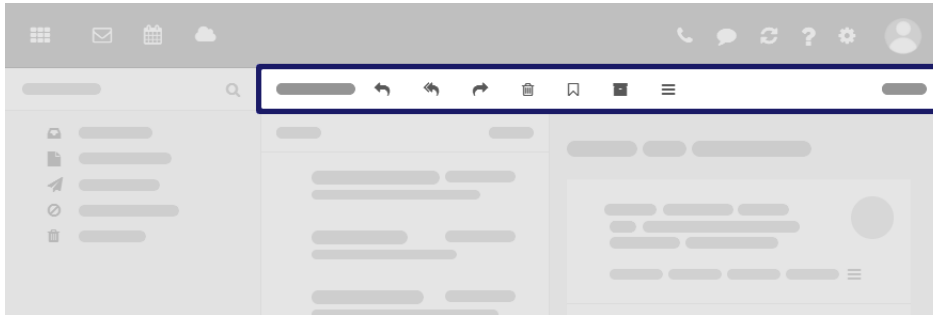
The search result is displayed in the display area.

Related topics:


- [The display area \(p. 26\)](#)
- [Searching for E-Mail Messages \(p. 95\)](#)
- [Searching for Contacts \(p. 130\)](#)
- [Searching for Appointments \(p. 177\)](#)
- [Searching for Tasks \(p. 204\)](#)
- [Searching for Files \(p. 232\)](#)

2.4.4 The tool bar

Note: The tool bar contents are different for each app. The following is a schematic representation.



Content

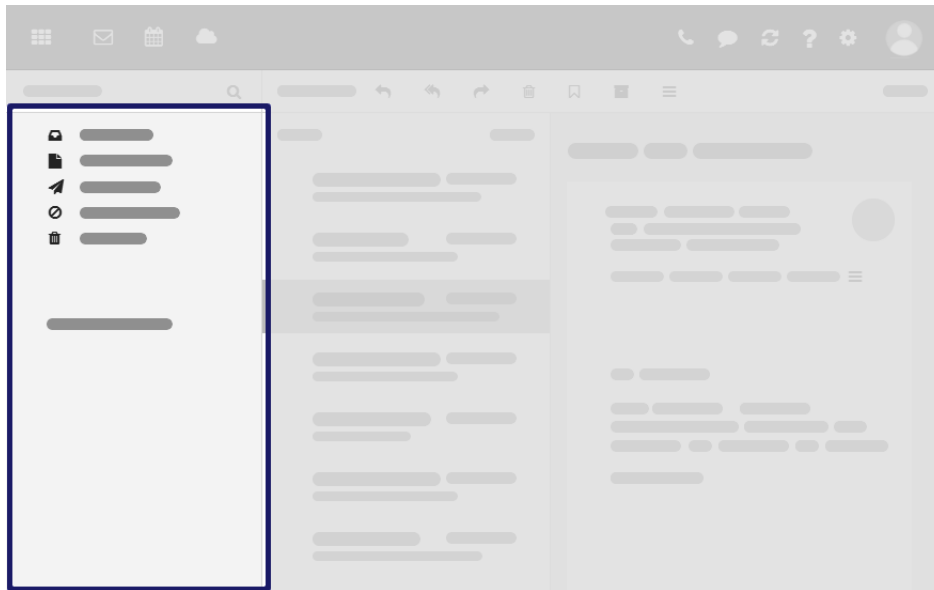
- Buttons for creating new objects, e.g. a new E-Mail or a new contact.
- Buttons or icons for editing objects.
- Depending on the app, additional app specific buttons or icons might be available.
- **Actions** icon . Contains app specific functions for organising objects.
- **View** button. Contains functions for controlling the layout in the display area and for opening or closing the folder view.

Related topics:

- [The E-Mail tool bar \(p. 57\)](#)
- [The Address Book tool bar \(p. 103\)](#)
- [The Calendar tool bar \(p. 135\)](#)
- [The Tasks tool bar \(p. 185\)](#)
- [The Drive tool bar \(p. 209\)](#)

2.4.5 The folder view


Note: The folder view contents are different for each app. The following is a schematic representation.



To open or close the folder view, use one of the following methods:

- Click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable or disable **Folder view**.
- On the bottom left side, click the **Open folder view** icon » or the **Close folder view** icon «.

Content

- The app specific folders
Folders are called differently in the following apps:
 - A folder is called an address book in the Address Book app.
 - A folder is called a calendar in the Calendar app.
- Depending on the application, sections for personal, public and shared folders
Note: Depending on the configuration, those sections might not be displayed if there are no public or shared folders.
- The **Folder-specific actions** icon  next to the selected folder. It contains functions for organising folders. Depending on the folder, additional functions might be available. You can also use the **context menu**.
- Depending on the app, additional functions might be available.

Related topics:

- [The E-Mail folder view \(p. 58\)](#)
- [The Address Book folder view \(p. 104\)](#)
- [The Calendar folder view \(p. 137\)](#)
- [The Tasks folder view \(p. 186\)](#)
- [The Drive folder view \(p. 210\)](#)

2.4.6 The display area

Note: The display area contents are different for each app. The following is a schematic representation.



Content

- a list of app specific objects: E-Mail Messages, contacts, appointments, tasks, files
- On top of the list, control elements for selecting or sorting objects are displayed.
- The details of the object selected in the list, are displayed in a detail view.

You can change the view in the display area by clicking on **View** in the tool bar.

Related topics:

- [The search bar \(p. 23\)](#)
- [The E-Mail display area \(p. 59\)](#)
- [The Address Book display area \(p. 105\)](#)
- [The Calendar display area \(p. 137\)](#)
- [The Tasks display area \(p. 186\)](#)
- [The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)

2.4.7 The pop-up

Note: The pop-up contents are different for each app. The following is a schematic representation.



Shows an object's details. The following actions open the pop-up:

- clicking on an E-Mail, an appointment or a task in the app Portal
- clicking on a sender or recipient in an E-Mail's detail view
- clicking on an appointment's or a task's participant
- clicking on an appointment in a calendar view

Content

- **Close** icon ✕
- Buttons for executing frequently used functions. The buttons differ depending on the object selected by you.
- The data of the object selected by you. The display of a person's data is called **Halo View**.
- If clicking on certain objects in the pop-up, an additional pop-up opens.

Related topics:

[The E-Mail pop-up \(p. 62\)](#)

[The Calendar pop-up \(p. 140\)](#)

[Displaying Contacts in the Halo View \(p. 111\)](#)

2.4.8 The notification area

Note: The following is a schematic representation.



Displays notifications about the following events:

- new appointment invitations
- reminder for a scheduled appointment or task

The following actions open the notification area:

- Clicking the **Notification** icon **1** in the menu bar. The icon is displayed when receiving a new notification.
- Depending on the settings, the notification area automatically opens if there is a new notification.

Content

- **Close** icon **X**. The notifications are displayed again if the notification area reopens.
- **Notify me again later**. The notifications are displayed again later.
- An appointment or task invitation includes the following elements:
 - **Delete** icon **X**. Deletes the invitation.
 - Appointment invitations: **Open in calendar** button. Displays the appointment suggestion in the calendar.
 - **Accept/Decline** button. Opens the *Change confirmation status* window for accepting or declining the appointment or task.
 - **Accept** button. Accepts the appointment or task.
- An appointment or task reminder includes the following elements:
 - **Delete** icon **X**, **OK** button. Deletes the reminder.
 - Clicking on the reminder shows details in the pop-up.
 - **Remind me again**. Opens a menu for setting a new reminder for this appointment or task.
 - For reminders of overdue tasks: **Done** button. Clicking on it marks the task as done.
- If there is more than one reminder: **Remove all reminders** button. Clicking on it deletes all reminders and closes the notification area.

Related topics:

[The menu bar \(p. 21\)](#)

[Customising the basic settings \(p. 36\)](#)

[Receiving Notifications \(p. 40\)](#)

[Answering Appointment Invitations \(p. 162\)](#)

[Answering Task Invitations \(p. 195\)](#)

2.4.9 The editing window




Note: The editing window contents are different for each app. The following is a schematic representation.



The following actions open the editing window:

- creating or editing objects
- editing the personal contact data
- creating or editing simple text files

Content

- The title bar includes the following elements:
 - window title
 - icons for setting the window position:
 - **Minimise** icon . Displays the editing window as an icon at the bottom.
 - **Maximise** icon . Displays the editing window in its maximum size. If clicking the icon again, the original size is restored. You can also double-click on the title bar again to toggle the window sizes.
 - **Close** icon . Cancels the current action. Closes the Format window.
- Depending on the app or function, various buttons, icons or input fields are available.
- Depending on the configuration, a function bar with buttons for closing, canceling or other functions is displayed at the top or the bottom.

Properties

- You can move an editing window by clicking on its title bar and dragging it to the wanted location.
- You can activate additional functions while an editing window is open.
- You can open multiple editing windows.
- Minimised editing windows are displayed as icons at the bottom. In order to restore an editing window, click the icon.

Related topics:

- [The E-Mail editing window \(p. 63\)](#)
- [The contact editing window \(p. 107\)](#)
- [The distribution list editing window \(p. 108\)](#)
- [The appointment editing window \(p. 143\)](#)
- [The editing window \(p. 189\)](#)
- [Changing Personal Contact Data \(p. 39\)](#)
- [Creating or Editing Text Files \(p. 223\)](#)

2.5 Keyboard Input

Learn how to use key shortcuts for interacting with the groupware.

- list of defined [keys and key combinations](#)
- [use the keyboard to interact](#) with the groupware
- [examples](#) for keyboard input

2.5.1 Keys and key combinations

The following key combinations are defined. Depending on the system, additional key combinations might be preset. Those key combinations are not officially supported.

Arrow down	Opens a menu.
Arrow left or right	Moves the cursor within input fields. Moves the cursor within the calendar views or the date picker. Opens or closes a folder in the folder view. Selects a function in the tool bar.
Arrow up or down	Selects an app in the app launcher. Selects elements in the folder view, the side bar or the display area. Moves the cursor within the calendar views or the date picker. Opens or closes a folder in the folder view. Selects a menu entry.
[a]	Moves the E-Mail messages that you selected in the list to the Archive folder.
[Ctrl]+[a]	Selects all objects in the list.
[Ctrl]+[F6] on Windows and Linux systems, [F6] on MacOS systems	Switches between menu bar, folder view, side bar and display area.
[Del], [Backspace]	Deletes the selected object.
[End]	Moves the cursor to the end of the line in input fields.
[Enter]	Executes the selected function.
[Esc]	Closes a pop-up. Cancels a window.
[Home]	Moves the cursor to the beginning of the line in input fields.
[Page up], [page down]	Browses the folder view or the side bar. Browses the calendar view or the date picker, depending on the time range displayed.
[Space]	Enables or disables the selected check box.
[Tab], [Shift]+[Tab]	Selects a function, an input field or a check box.

2.5.2 Interacting with the user interface via keyboard

As an alternative to the mouse you can use the following keys:


- To switch between the menu bar, the folder view, the sidebar, and the display area, use [Ctrl]+[F6] on Windows and Linux systems, [F6] on MacOS systems.
- To select an app in the app launcher, use [Down arrow] or [Up arrow].
- To select a function, an input field or a check box, use the [Tab] key. The selected element will be highlighted.
With [Shift]+[Tab] you can select elements in reverse order.
- To execute the function selected, press [Enter].
- To enable or disable a selected checkbox, press the [Space bar].
- To toggle the checkboxes, use the cursor keys.
- To move the cursor within input fields, use the following keys: cursor keys, [Home], [End].
- To browse the folder view or the sidebar, use the following keys: [Page up], [page down]
- To open or close a folder in the folder view, use the left or right arrow key.
- To select elements in the folder view, the tool bar, the side bar or the display area, use the cursor keys.
- To close a pop-up or cancel a window, press [Esc].
- To delete the selected E-Mail messages, folders or files press [Del] or [Backspace].
- To move selected E-Mail messages to the **Archive** folder, press [a].
- To select all objects in a list, press [ctrl]+[a]

2.5.3 Use cases




Instructions that show how to use the keyboard controls:

- How to use the keyboard to send a new E-Mail
- How to use the keyboard to reply to an E-Mail

How to use the keyboard to send a new email:

1. If the E-Mail app is not launched, do the following:
 - Repeatedly press [Ctrl]+[F6] or [F6] on Mac OS systems until the **My account** icon is highlighted on the right side of the menu bar.
 - Use [Left arrow] to navigate to the **All Applications** icon . Press [Enter] to open the App Launcher.
 - Use [Down arrow] to navigate to the **E-Mail** icon. Press [Enter]. The E-Mail app will be launched.
2. Repeatedly press [Tab] until the **Compose** button is highlighted in the tool bar. Press [Enter]. The *Compose* window opens. The input field **To:** is enabled.
3. Enter the recipient's E-Mail address. Press [Enter].
4. Repeatedly press [Tab] until the **Subject** input field is highlighted. Enter the subject. Press [Enter]. The input field for the E-Mail text is enabled.
5. Enter the E-Mail text.
6. In order to send the E-Mail, press [Tab]. The **Send** button is highlighted. Press [Enter]. The E-Mail is sent.
7. To add attachments, repeatedly press [Tab] or [Shift]+[Tab] until the **Attachment** button is highlighted. Press [Enter]. Select **Add local file**.
A dialogue field for selecting files opens. Depending on the system, use the [Tab] key, the [Enter] key and the cursor keys to select a file and to close the system dialogue.
Repeatedly press [Tab] until the **Send** button is highlighted. Press [Enter]. The E-Mail is sent.

How to use the keyboard to reply to an email:

1. If the E-Mail app is not launched, do the following:
 - Repeatedly press [Ctrl]+[F6] or [F6] on Mac OS systems until the **My account** icon is highlighted on the right side of the menu bar.
 - Use [Left arrow] to navigate to the **All Applications** icon . Press [Enter] to open the App Launcher.
 - Use [Down arrow] to navigate to the **E-Mail** icon. Press [Enter]. The E-Mail app will be launched.
2. Repeatedly press [Tab] or [Ctrl]+[F6] or [F6] on Mac OS systems until a folder is highlighted in the folder view. Use the cursor keys to select the desired folder. To view or hide sub-folders, use [Right arrow] or [Left arrow].
3. If the desired folder is highlighted, press [Enter]. The first E-Mail in the folder is highlighted in the list.
4. Use the cursor keys to select the desired email.
5. To reply to the E-Mail, repeatedly press [Tab] or [Shift]+[Tab], until the **Reply** function or the **Reply all** function is highlighted. Press [Enter] to activate the function.
Repeatedly press [Shift]+[Tab] until the **Compose** button is highlighted in the tool bar. Use the cursor keys to browse to the **Reply to sender** icon  or to the **Reply to all recipients** icon . Press [Enter].

2.6 Usage on Mobile Devices

You can also utilise the groupware on your Android or iOS mobile device. Compared to the usage on a workstation, there are the following differences:

- The user interface automatically adjusts to the smaller screen.
- The user interface follows the standards for mobile devices.
- Some less frequently used functions are not available on a mobile device.

How to launch the groupware on a mobile device:

1. Open a web browser.
2. Enter the server address in the address bar. The login window will be displayed.
Enter your username and your password. Note that they are case-sensitive.
3. To save your credentials locally, enable **Stay signed in**.
4. Tap on **Sign in**.
If you set up two-factor authentication, an additional page is displayed. Enter the authentication data on this page.

Tip: To simplify future logins, launch the groupware and create a desktop shortcut.

To do so, open your browser's system menu. Select **Add to home screen**.

If you launch the groupware by tapping the icon, the browser's address bar will not be displayed. This saves space for the groupware interface.

3 Basic Settings


Learn how to customise the groupware's design and behaviour to fit your personal needs:

- [Customising the basic settings \(p. 36\)](#)
- [Changing the Regional Settings \(p. 38\)](#)
- [Changing Personal Contact Data \(p. 39\)](#)
- [Receiving Notifications \(p. 40\)](#)
- [Manually Installing Local Apps \(p. 42\)](#)
- [Using a Wizard to Set Up Local Apps \(p. 43\)](#)
- [Setting up and Configuring the Zoom Integration \(p. 44\)](#)
- [Setting the presence status \(p. 46\)](#)

3.1 Customising the basic settings

In the basic settings, you can set the language, the regional settings and other personal settings.

How to customise the basic settings:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **Basic settings** in the side bar.

The following settings are available by default:

Language

Defines the user interface language.

More regional settings

Opens a window for customising regional settings. The preset regional settings depend on the selected language.

Time zone

Defines the time zone to which all time-bound entries refer.
Also see [Displaying multiple time zones \(p. 146\)](#)

Design

Defines the colour scheme for the user interface.

Refresh interval

Defines the interval for retrieving new objects from the server.

Default app after sign in

Defines the application that is displayed after login.

Automatic sign out

Specifies whether you are automatically signed out if you have not worked with the groupware for a specific time.

Automatic opening of notification area

Specifies whether the notification area automatically opens when receiving a new notification or E-Mail.

Show desktop notifications

Defines whether you will receive a desktop notification for new E-Mail messages. Depending on the browser settings, the **Manage browser permissions now** button is displayed. If clicking on the button, a browser specific dialogue for allowing notifications opens.

Configure quick launchers

Opens a window that allows you to define the apps that should be displayed as quick launch icons in the menu bar. Depending on the configuration, you can set a different number of quick launch icons. You can also open the window from a quick launch icon's context menu.

My contact data

In order to change your personal contact data in the global address book, click on this button.

Change password

In order to change your password, click on this button.

Related topics:

- [Changing the Regional Settings \(p. 38\)](#)
- [Changing Personal Contact Data \(p. 39\)](#)
- [Receiving Notifications \(p. 40\)](#)
- [Manually Installing Local Apps \(p. 42\)](#)
- [Using a Wizard to Set Up Local Apps \(p. 43\)](#)
- [Setting up and Configuring the Zoom Integration \(p. 44\)](#)

[Setting the presence status \(p. 46\)](#)

[The notification area \(p. 28\)](#)

3.2 Changing the Regional Settings


In the regional settings, you set the data formatting and basic calendar settings:

- time format
- date format
- number format
- first weekday of a calendar week
- first calendar week of a year

The following options are available:

- select a regional setting
- customise the regional setting

How to change the regional settings:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **Basic settings** in the side bar.
Click on **More regional settings** in the display area. The *Regional settings* window opens.
3. Change the settings.
To undo the change, click on **Reset**.

Related topics:

- [Customising the basic settings \(p. 36\)](#)
- [Changing Personal Contact Data \(p. 39\)](#)

3.3 Changing Personal Contact Data

The following options are available:

- change personal contact data
- create a contact picture by uploading an existing picture or by taking a new photo with the device camera

How to change your personal contact data:

1. Click the **My account** icon on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Edit personal data**.
You can also click on **My contact data** in the basic settings or in the address book settings.
2. Change the data. Click on **Save**.

Tip: You can also change your personal contact data by using the *User data* widget in the Portal app.

How to create a contact picture:

1. Click the **My account** icon on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Edit personal data**.
You can also click on **My contact data** in the basic settings or in the address book settings.
2. Click on the empty contact picture. The *Edit image* window opens.
 - You can upload an existing image or take a new picture with the device camera.
 - You can adjust the image section with the zoom and by moving or rotating the photo.Click on **OK**.
3. Click on **Save**. The photo will be inserted.
In order to edit the photo, click on it.

User interface:

- [The menu bar \(p. 21\)](#)
- [The editing window \(p. 29\)](#)
- [The Address Book folder view \(p. 104\)](#)
- [User data widget \(p. 50\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Customising the basic settings \(p. 36\)](#)
- [Changing the Regional Settings \(p. 38\)](#)
- [Address Book Settings \(p. 131\)](#)

3.4 Receiving Notifications

You can configure the groupware to receive notifications about specific events.






You will be notified in the notification area for the following events:

- new appointment invitations
- appointment reminders
- due tasks
- tasks with a due date in the past


You will receive a desktop notification for the following events if the groupware is in the background:

- incoming E-Mail messages

How to use the notification area

1. As soon as a notification is being received, the **Notifications** icon  shows the number of new notifications. To open the notification area, click the icon.
If the notification area is to be opened automatically upon receipt of new notifications, proceed as follows:
 - a. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
 - b. Click on **Basic settings** in the side bar.
Enable **Automatic opening of notification area** in the display area.
2. You can do the following:
 - To close the notification area, click the **Close** icon . The notifications will be hidden. In order to show the notifications again, click the **Notifications** icon  in the menu bar.
 - To receive the notification again later, click on **Notify me again later**. The notification area will be closed.
 - To show a notification's details, click on the notification title.
 - To display appointment invitation suggestions in the calendar, click on **Open in calendar**.
 - To accept or decline an invitation, click on the respective button.
 - To receive a specific reminder again, select a value in **Remind me again**. Click on **OK**. The notification area will be closed.
 - To mark overdue tasks as done, click on the respective button.
 - To delete a reminder, click on **OK** next to the reminder.
You can also click the **Delete** icon  next to the reminder.
 - If there is more than one reminder: To delete all reminders, click on **Remove all reminders** at the bottom.

How to enable desktop notifications:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **Basic settings** in the side bar.
3. Enable **Show desktop notifications** in the notification area.
Depending on the browser settings, the **Manage browser permissions now** button is displayed. Click the button. You are asked by the browser whether the receipt of notifications should be allowed. Grant this permission.
Note: Depending on the browser, you might have to allow the receipt of notifications in the browser settings for the setting above to take effect. Information can be found in the browser help pages.

User interface:

[The notification area \(p. 28\)](#)

Related topics:

[Customising the basic settings \(p. 36\)](#)


[Settings for receiving E-Mail messages. \(p. 99\)](#)

3.5 Manually Installing Local Apps

You can manually install local Drive apps for MS Windows, macOS, iOS or Android. The local Drive clients synchronise your Drive app data with your local workstation or mobile device.

Note: Depending on the configuration, those functions might not be available. In this case you can use a wizard to set up the apps.

How to install local Drive apps for workstations or mobile devices:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Downloads**.
Click the respective icon in the display area. Follow the instructions on installing the apps.

Related topics:

[Using a Wizard to Set Up Local Apps \(p. 43\)](#)

[Customising the basic settings \(p. 36\)](#)


3.6 Using a Wizard to Set Up Local Apps

You can also access your E-Mail messages or groupware data by using suitable apps and clients on mobile devices and workstations. You can use a wizard in the groupware to install and configure those apps and clients. The wizard includes the following functions:

- Installing and configuring apps and clients on devices such as PCs, tablets and smartphones. The supported devices are: Windows, Apple and Android.
- Installing an E-Mail client on Windows systems. The client makes your E-Mail messages, appointments, tasks and contacts locally available.
- Installing the local Drive app for desktop and mobile devices. This app is downloaded and installed from the respective app store for the device. The local Drive clients synchronise your Drive app data with your local workstation or mobile device.
- Depending on the device, the configuration might also be possible by E-Mail or SMS. Advanced users can display the configuration data for a manual configuration.

Note: Depending on the configuration, the wizard might not be available. In this case you can manually install clients and apps.

How to use the wizard:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Connect your device**. The wizard will be launched.
2. Select your system and the required devices. Follow the instructions.

User interface:

[The menu bar \(p. 21\)](#)

Related topics:

[Manually Installing Local Apps \(p. 42\)](#)



[Customising the basic settings \(p. 36\)](#)

3.7 Setting up and Configuring the Zoom Integration


The following options are available:

- Set up the Zoom integration
Prior to being able to have Zoom meetings with other contacts, you have to set up the Zoom integration. To do so, you have to grant the groupware access to a Zoom account.
- Configure the Zoom integration
You can configure the Zoom integration according to your needs.

How to set up the Zoom integration:

1. If you call a contact via Zoom in the E-Mail, Address Book or Calendar app before having set up the Zoom integration, a window for registering a Zoom account opens. In this case, proceed with step 4.
2. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
In the side bar, click on **Zoom Integration**.
3. Click on **Add Zoom account** in the display area. If this button is not displayed, the Zoom integration has been done already.
A window for registering a Zoom account opens.
4. Use one of the following methods:
 - Below **Sign in**, use the login method that you learned from your administrator or host.
 - To create your own Zoom account, click on **Register for free**. Follow the instructions.
The data of the linked Zoom account will be displayed.
In order to cancel the link, click the **Remove account** icon  next to the account.

How to configure the Zoom integration:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Zoom Integration**.

The following settings are available:

Appointments

With those options, you can define the behaviour if you select **Zoom Meeting** in the **Conference** drop-down when creating appointments.

- **Always add a random meeting password**
Defines whether the conference will be secured by an automatically created password.
- **Automatically copy link to location**
Defines whether the link for the Zoom meeting participation will be copied to the **Location** field.
- **Copy dial-in information to description**
Defines whether the link for the Zoom meeting participation will be copied to the **Location** field.

Incoming calls

With those options, you can define the behaviour for incoming Zoom calls if the groupware is in the background.

- **Show desktop notifications**
Defines whether you will receive a desktop notification for an incoming Zoom call.
- **Play ringtone on incoming call**
Defines whether a notification sound will be played for incoming Zoom calls.

Dial-in numbers

If you at least have a Zoom Pro account, Zoom offers dial-in numbers by country. To define the countries to be displayed in in appointment invitations, click on **Open Zoom profile**.

Related topics:

- [Calling the Sender or Another Recipient \(p. 76\)](#)
- [Calling Contacts \(p. 119\)](#)
- [Calling Appointment Participants \(p. 164\)](#)
- [Scheduling audio/video conferences \(p. 153\)](#)
- [Customising the basic settings \(p. 36\)](#)
- [Setting the presence status \(p. 46\)](#)

3.8 Setting the presence status

You can set your current presence status to indicate your availability for a call to other users.

How to set the current presence status:

1. Click the **My account** icon on the right side of the menu bar.
2. Select a presence status below **Availability**. The following options are available:
 - **Online**. You are signed in and can be contacted.
 - **Absent**. You are currently absent and cannot be contacted.
 - **Busy**. You do not want to be disturbed, e.g. if you are in a meeting.
 - **Invisible**. You are not signed in.

Your presence status is visible to other users wherever your user data is displayed.

- as an E-Mail's sender or recipient
- in the address book list, in the address book detail view
- as appointment participant, as task participant

Related topics:

[Calling the Sender or Another Recipient \(p. 76\)](#)

[Calling Contacts \(p. 119\)](#)

[Calling Appointment Participants \(p. 164\)](#)

[Scheduling audio/video conferences \(p. 153\)](#)

[Customising the basic settings \(p. 36\)](#)


[Setting up and Configuring the Zoom Integration \(p. 44\)](#)

4 Portal

Learn how to work with the Portal application.

- [The Portal Components \(p. 48\)](#)
- [Customising the Portal \(p. 51\)](#)
- [Portal Settings \(p. 54\)](#)

How to start the Portal app

Click the **All Applications** icon  in the menu bar. Click on **Portal** in the App Launcher.

4.1 The Portal Components

Learn about the components of the Portal app user interface and how to use them:

- [Signed in as](#) (p. 49)
- **Customise this page** button (p. 49)
- **Add widget** button (p. 49)
- [Appointments widget](#) (p. 49)
- [Inbox widget](#) (p. 49)
- [Tasks widget](#) (p. 49)
- [Recently changed files widget](#) (p. 49)
- [User data widget](#) (p. 50)
- [Quota widget](#) (p. 50)
- [News widgets](#) (p. 50)
- [Widgets with news from your social networks](#) (p. 50)
- [Widgets with information about Drive apps](#) (p. 50)

Depending on the configuration, the portal components can differ from the display described.

4.1.1 Signed in as

Displays the username that you used for signing in.

4.1.2 Customise this page button

If clicking on this button, a page will be displayed that allows you to customise the Portal.

Related topics:

[Customising the Portal \(p. 51\)](#)

4.1.3 Add widget button

If clicking on this button, a menu will be opened that allows you to add new widgets.

Related topics:

[Adding Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)

4.1.4 Appointments widget

Displays your current appointments. You can do the following:

- If clicking on an appointment, a pop-up opens. The pop-up shows the appointment data.
- If clicking on a participant, an additional pop-up opens.
- In order to close a pop-up, click the **Close** icon on the upper right side.

4.1.5 Inbox widget

Shows new E-Mail messages. You can do the following:

- If clicking on an E-Mail, a pop-up opens. The pop-up displays the E-Mail's contents.
- To delete, reply to or forward the email, click on the respective button in the pop-up.
- To close a pop-up, click on **Close** in the top right corner.

4.1.6 Tasks widget

Shows unfinished tasks. You can do the following:

- If clicking on a task, a pop-up opens. The pop-up shows the appointment data.
- In order to close a pop-up, click the **Close** icon on the upper right side.

4.1.7 Recently changed files widget

Displays new or changed files.

4.1.8 User data widget

Includes links for the following functions:

- Changing your personal contact data
- Changing your password

Related topics:

[Changing Personal Contact Data \(p. 39\)](#)

[Changing the Password \(p. 19\)](#)

4.1.9 Quota widget

Displays the current quota used on your account on the server.

4.1.10 News widgets

Display current messages from different message sources:

- Messages from RSS feeds
- Photos from web pages like Flickr or Tumblr

To subscribe to a message source or an RSS feed, add a new widget to the Portal. The settings or a message source of an RSS feed can be changed later.

4.1.11 Widgets with news from your social networks

Show current information from your social networks.

- The most recent messages from a social network are displayed in a widget.
- If clicking on content, a pop-up opens with details and links to the contact's profile.
- Depending on the network, certain functions are displayed, e.g. for posting or creating a message.

To display news from your social networks, add a new widget to the Portal. You can change your settings at a later point of time.

4.1.12 Widgets with information about Drive apps

Depending on the configuration, there are widgets being displayed that contain information on the installation of local Drive apps. Additional information can be found in the Drive apps user guide.

4.2 Customising the Portal

Learn how to set the widgets that are to be displayed on the portal.

- [Changing the widgets' order \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Removing Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Adding Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Adding a Portal widget for social networks \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Creating a XING account \(p. 53\)](#)

Note: Depending on the configuration, some widgets might not be able to be changed.

User interface: **Customise this page** button (p. 49)

4.2.1 Changing the widgets' order

You can define the order of the widgets.

How to change the order of the widgets:

1. Drag a widget to another position.
2. Drop the widget in the new position.

Related topics:

- [Removing Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Adding Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Adding a Portal widget for social networks \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Portal Settings \(p. 54\)](#)

4.2.2 Removing Portal widgets

You can remove a widget from the portal by closing it.

How to remove a widget:

Click the **Close** icon ✕

Related topics:

- [Adding Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Changing the widgets' order \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Adding a Portal widget for social networks \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Portal Settings \(p. 54\)](#)

4.2.3 Adding Portal widgets

You can extend the existing widgets by adding new ones.

How to add new widgets:

1. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click the **Settings** icon ⚙ on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**. Click on **Portal** in the side bar. Click on **Add widget**. Select an entry.
 - Click on **Add widget** on the upper right side of the Portal app. Select an entry.
2. Some widgets require additional data. Enter the required values.

User interface:

[Add widget](#) button (p. 49)

Related topics:

- [Removing Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Changing the widgets' order \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Adding a Portal widget for social networks \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Portal Settings \(p. 54\)](#)
- [Adding an E-Mail to the Portal \(p. 83\)](#)
- [Adding files to the Portal \(p. 228\)](#)

4.2.4 Adding a Portal widget for social networks

In order to access information and functions of your social networks, you can add widgets for social networks.

How to add a widget for accessing social networks:

1. Click on **Add widget** on the upper right side of the Portal app. Select one of the entries. The widget will be added.
2. To enable the access, add your social network account by clicking on the respective button in the widget.
You can change or delete the account in the account settings.

Related topics:

- [Changing the widgets' order \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Removing Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Adding Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Creating a XING account \(p. 53\)](#)
- [Portal Settings \(p. 54\)](#)
- [Viewing, editing, deleting accounts \(p. 260\)](#)

4.2.5 Creating a XING account

If you do not have an Xing account yet, you can use a widget to create a new Xing account.

How to create an XING account by using your groupware data:


1. Click on **Add widget** on the upper right side of the Portal app. Select **Xing**. The widget will be added.
2. Click on **Create a Xing account using the data stored here** in the widget.
3. Check the suggested data for creating the XING account. In order to create the account, click on **Create**.

Related topics:

- [Changing the widgets' order \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Removing Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Adding Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Adding a Portal widget for social networks \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Portal Settings \(p. 54\)](#)
- [Viewing, editing, deleting accounts \(p. 260\)](#)

4.3 Portal Settings

How to use the Portal settings:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **Portal** in the side bar.
3. Change the settings.



Tip: You can also display the portal settings page by clicking on **Customise this page** in the Portal app.

The following settings are available:

add widget

Opens a menu for adding widgets.

Functions for editing widgets

- **Move icon**  Changes the widget order.
- **Edit** Allows editing a widget's settings, e.g. the URL or description.
Note: This button is only available for certain widgets.
- **Colour** Defines the colour used for displaying a widget's name.
- **Disable** Removes a widget from the Portal. To display the widget again, click on the **Enable** button.
- **Delete icon**  This icon deletes a widget from the portal and from the list of widgets on the settings page.
Warning: If you delete a widget, all settings for this widget will be lost.

Reduce to widget summary

Defines whether the complete content of a widget is displayed on mobile devices or just an overview. This is e.g. valid for the widgets *Recently changed files*, *Appointments*, *Inbox*. In order to view the complete content of the widget, tap the overview text.

Note: You have to re-login in order for the new setting to get activated.

Related topics:

[Changing the widgets' order \(p. 52\)](#)

[Removing Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)

[Adding Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)


[Adding a Portal widget for social networks \(p. 52\)](#)

5 E-Mail

Learn how to work with the E-Mail application.

- [The E-Mail Components \(p. 56\)](#)
- [Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)
- [Viewing or Saving email Attachments \(p. 65\)](#)
- [Sending email messages \(p. 66\)](#)
- [Calling the Sender or Another Recipient \(p. 76\)](#)
- [Adding E-Mail Folders \(p. 77\)](#)
- [Managing E-Mail messages \(p. 78\)](#)
- [Using E-Mail Filters \(p. 89\)](#)
- [Searching for E-Mail Messages \(p. 95\)](#)
- [Adding E-Mail Accounts \(p. 97\)](#)
- [Email Settings \(p. 98\)](#)

How to start the E-Mail app

Click the **All Applications** icon  in the menu bar. Click on **E-Mail** in the App Launcher.

Depending on the configuration, you can also click the quick start icon in the menu bar for launching the **E-Mail** app.

5.1 The E-Mail Components

Learn about the components of the E-Mail app user interface and how to use them:

- [The E-Mail tool bar \(p. 57\)](#)
- [The E-Mail folder view \(p. 58\)](#)
- [The E-Mail categories bar \(p. 59\)](#)
- [The E-Mail display area \(p. 59\)](#)
 - [The E-Mail list \(p. 60\)](#)
 - [The E-Mail detail view \(p. 61\)](#)
 - [The E-Mail pop-up \(p. 62\)](#)
- [The E-Mail editing window \(p. 63\)](#)

5.1.1 The E-Mail tool bar

Contains functions for sending, editing and organizing E-Mail messages.

Content

- **Compose.** Creates a new E-Mail.
- Icons for **replying to** and **forwarding** the selected E-Mail: ↩ ↪ ↻
- **Delete** icon 🗑. Deletes the E-Mail messages selected by you.
- **Set category** icon 📁. Opens a menu allowing you to move an E-Mail to a category. This icon is only available if the categories bar is displayed.
- Icons for flagging E-Mail messages.
 - **Set color** icon 🏷. Opens a menu, allowing you to assign a coloured label to the E-Mail.
 - **Flag** icon ☆. Flags the E-Mail.
Note: Depending on the configuration, not all options for flagging might be available.
- **Archive** icon 📦. Archives the E-Mail Messages you have selected.
- **More actions** icon ☰. Opens a menu with further functions.
- **View.** Opens a menu with check boxes for controlling the view.
 - Defining the layout of the list and detail view: **Vertically, Compact, Horizontally**
 - **List.** Shows the list of E-Mail messages. To display the detail view click on an E-Mail. Above the detail view a navigation bar will be displayed.
 - **Use categories.** Opens or closes the categories bar.
 - **Configure.** Opens the window for configuring the categories bar.
 - **Folder view.** Opens or closes the folder view.
 - **Checkboxes.** Displays checkboxes in the list, for marking objects.
 - **Text preview.** Shows a preview of the E-Mail content for each E-Mail in the list.
 - **Contact pictures.** Next to each E-Mail in the list, a contact picture of the sender will be displayed, provided the sender saved one in the address book.
 - **Date and time.** Shows the exact date and time when the E-Mail was received.
 - **Message size.** Shows the E-Mail size.
 - **Vacation notice.** Opens the *Vacation notice* window.
 - **All attachments.** Shows all E-Mail attachments that you have sent or received, in the Drive app.

General description of the user interface:

[The tool bar \(p. 24\)](#)

Related topics:

[The E-Mail categories bar \(p. 59\)](#)

[Sending email messages \(p. 66\)](#)

[Managing E-Mail messages \(p. 78\)](#)

5.1.2 The E-Mail folder view

Displays the E-Mail folders.


In order to display the folder view, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **Folder view**.

Content

- **Inbox.** By default, all incoming E-Mail messages go to this folder.
- **Unread.** This folder shows all unread messages.
- **Drafts.** Contains the E-Mail messages saved as drafts.
- **Sent objects.** Contains the E-Mail messages sent by you.
- **Trash.** Contains the E-Mail messages deleted by you.
- **Archive.** Contains the E-Mail messages archived by you.
- **My folders.** Contains the E-Mail folders created by you.

Depending on the configuration, the content can differ from this information.

Functions

- To display the number of E-Mail messages in a folder, hover over the folder name. A tool tip shows the number of E-Mail messages.
- If clicking on a folder, its E-Mail messages will be displayed.
- The **Actions** icon  next to the selected folder offers functions for organising data and app specific folder functions.
You can also use the **context menu**.
- In the Drive app, the **View all Attachments** button below the folders shows all E-Mail attachments that you have received or sent.
- Below the folders there's the button **Add e-mail account** for adding E-Mail accounts.
- To adjust the folder view width, hover over the line between the folder view and the display area. Drag the border to the left or to the right.

General description of the user interface:

[The folder view \(p. 25\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)

[Adding E-Mail Folders \(p. 77\)](#)

[Adding E-Mail Accounts \(p. 97\)](#)

[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

[Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)

[Displaying E-Mail attachments in Drive \(p. 217\)](#)

5.1.3 The E-Mail categories bar

Shows predefined categories for the E-Mail messages in the **Inbox** folder. This allows assigning incoming E-Mail messages to certain categories sorted by senders.

Notes:

- Depending on the configuration, categories might not be available. If categories are available, you can show or hide the categories bar in the **View** menu in the tool bar.
- The categories' number, names and order are preset. Depending on the server configuration, some categories can be renamed or disabled.

Functions

- If clicking on a category, only the E-Mail messages assigned to this category will be shown in the display area.
- If double-clicking or right-clicking on a category, a window opens that allows renaming or disabling categories.

Related topics:

[Working with tabs \(p. 79\)](#)

[The E-Mail tool bar \(p. 57\)](#)

5.1.4 The E-Mail display area

Contains the E-Mail list and an E-Mail's detail view.

In order to select a layout, click on **View** in the tool bar.

General description of the user interface:

[The display area \(p. 26\)](#)

Related topics:

[The E-Mail list \(p. 60\)](#)

[The E-Mail detail view \(p. 61\)](#)

5.1.5 The E-Mail list

Displays a list of the E-Mail messages in the current folder.

Content

- The following details are displayed for each E-Mail: Sender, subject, and date of receipt. Unread E-Mail messages are marked with the **Unread** icon ● .
- The **View** menu in the tool bar enables you to display additional information: text preview, contact pictures, exact dates, message size
- If available, additional information is shown: attachment icons, coloured label, flag, number of E-Mail messages in [conversation](#), priority.
- Encrypted E-Mail messages are marked with the Encrypted icon 🔒 .
- If a vacation notice is active, a notification is displayed above the list. If you close the notification, the vacation notice remains active.

Functions

- To select multiple E-Mail messages, enable the **Checkboxes** option in the **View** drop-down in the tool bar.
You can also use your system's multi-selection functions.
- If clicking on the **All** button above the list, a drop-down opens. It allows executing the following functions for all E-Mail messages in the current E-Mail folder: mark as read, move, archive, delete.
- If clicking on the **Sort by** button above the list, a menu opens that helps you sort your E-Mail messages. To combine all E-Mail messages of a conversation in a single list entry, enable the **Conversations** checkbox in **Sort**.
The sorting setting will be applied to the selected E-Mail folder. You can use different settings for the individual folders.
- To display a sender's E-Mail address instead of the sender name, hover over the sender name. The original E-Mail address is displayed in a tooltip.
- If clicking on an E-Mail, its content will be displayed in the display area.
If double-clicking on an E-Mail in the list, the content will be displayed in a window.
- To enable frequently used functions, you can use the **context menu** for an E-Mail or for multiple E-Mail messages.
- To adjust the list width, hover over the line between the list and the detail view. Drag the border to the left or to the right.

Related topics:

[The E-Mail display area \(p. 59\)](#)

[The E-Mail detail view \(p. 61\)](#)

[Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)

[Sending email messages \(p. 66\)](#)









[Managing E-Mail messages \(p. 78\)](#)

5.1.6 The E-Mail detail view

Displays the content of the E-Mail that you selected in the list. If double-clicking on the E-Mail in the list, the data will be displayed in a window.

In order to display the detail view, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable one of the following settings: **Vertically, Compact, Horizontally**

Content

- **Subject**
If E-Mail messages are sorted by conversations, the **Open/close all messages** icon  will be displayed next to the conversation subject. If clicking on a free area between the sender and the date of receipt, the E-Mail opens or closes.
- **Read** icon . Changes the status from Read to Unread and vice versa.
- The sender's name or E-Mail address, the recipients' names.
If clicking on a name, a pop-up opens. It displays information about the contact.
- Depending on the configuration, an icon is displayed next to the sender of a suspicious E-Mail. To display a message text, hover over the warning icon.
A highlighted message text will be displayed below the function bar.
- Date and time of the receipt.
- Icons for flagging E-Mail messages:
 - **Flag** icon . Flags the E-Mail.
 - **Set colour** icon . Opens a menu, allowing you to assign a coloured label to the E-Mail.
Note: Depending on the configuration, not all options for flagging will be available.
- A picture of the sender, if available.
- Frequently used functions: **Reply, Reply all, Forward, Delete**
- **More actions** icon . If clicking on it, a menu with further functions for sending or organising E-Mail messages will be opened.
- If the E-Mail contains attachments, additional elements are displayed:
 - **Attachment** icon . If clicking on it, the attachments will be displayed as preview or list.
If clicking the **Toggle preview** icon  or  the attachments will be shown as preview or as list.
 - Buttons that are used to apply a function to all E-Mail attachments at once.
- If selecting an E-Mail with an attachment as link in the **Sent items** folder, information about the attachment will be displayed at the top of the E-Mail text.
- E-Mail text. Quotes from previous E-Mail messages are marked at the beginning of the line.

Related topics:

- [The E-Mail display area \(p. 59\)](#)
- [The E-Mail list \(p. 60\)](#)
- [The E-Mail pop-up \(p. 62\)](#)
- [Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)
- [Viewing or Saving email Attachments \(p. 65\)](#)
- [Sending email messages \(p. 66\)](#)
- [Managing E-Mail messages \(p. 78\)](#)
- [Showing the E-Mail Authenticity \(p. 266\)](#)

5.1.7 The E-Mail pop-up

Displays the contact data of the sender or recipient that you select in the detail view.

Content

- Buttons for frequently used functions
 - If the contact is not yet saved in an address book, **Add to address book** will be displayed. If clicking on the button, the window for creating a new contact opens.
 - **Send e-mail**. Opens the window for sending a new E-Mail to the contact.
 - **Invite**. Opens the window for creating an appointment with this contact.
- **More actions** icon ☰. If clicking the icon, a menu with frequently used functions for organising contacts is opened.
- The contact's **Halo View**.

General description of the user interface:

[The pop-up \(p. 27\)](#)

Related topics:

[The E-Mail detail view \(p. 61\)](#)

[Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)

[Calling the Sender or Another Recipient \(p. 76\)](#)

[Displaying Contacts in the Halo View \(p. 111\)](#)








5.1.8 The E-Mail editing window

This window is used when creating or editing an E-Mail.

In order to open the window, do one of the following:

- Click on **Compose** in the tool bar.
- Select an E-Mail. Click an icon for replying or forwarding, in the tool bar.
- Select an E-Mail draft. Click on **Edit draft** or on **Edit copy** in the tool bar.

Content

- Addresses
 - **From**. Shows your sender address. If clicking on it, a menu with several functions opens:
 - select another sender address
 - **Show names**. Defines whether the real name is displayed.
 - **Edit names**. Opens the window for editing the real name.
 - **CC, BCC** button. If clicking on a button, the **CC** or **BCC** input field opens below **To**. You can use the fields to send copies to other recipients.
 - **To** input field. While entering the recipients, matching suggestions will be displayed. To accept a suggestion, click on it.
If clicking on **To**, **CC**, **BCC** or one of the **Select contacts** icons  a window for selecting contacts from an address book opens.
- E-Mail content
 - **Subject** input field. Enter your E-Mail's subject in this field.
 - If the E-Mail has attachments, the attachments will be displayed as preview or list.
 - Input field for the E-Mail text.
To format the text or to add images, click the **Options** icon  in the button bar. Enable **HTML**. Enable the **Show tool bar** icon  in the button bar.
- button bar
 - **Send**. Sends the E-Mail to the entered recipients.
 - **Show tool bar** or **Hide tool bar** icon **A**. Shows or hides a tool bar with formatting options.
 - **Add local file** icon . Adds local files.
 - **Add from Drive** icon . Adds files that are saved in the Drive app.
 - **Enable encryption** icon . Encrypts the E-Mail. A function bar will be displayed above the E-Mail text. If clicking on **Options**, a menu with encryption options opens:
Note: Depending on the configuration, this function might not be available.
 - **Options** icon . Opens a menu with additional functions:
 - add signature to E-Mail text, edit signature
 - set priority, add vCard, request read receipt
 - define the E-Mail's text format: plain text, HTML
 - save the E-Mail as draft and close the editing window

General description of the user interface:

[The editing window \(p. 29\)](#)

Related topics:



[Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)

[Sending encrypted E-Mail messages \(p. 280\)](#)

5.2 Displaying email messages

Learn how to select a specific E-Mail in a folder and display it in different ways in order to read it.

How to display an email:

1. Open an E-Mail folder in the folder view.
When having selected the **Inbox** folder and if you are using E-Mail categories, you can select a category.
2. Click an E-Mail in the list. The content of the E-Mail will be displayed in the detail view.
 - If the E-Mail is part of a conversation, all E-Mail messages in the conversation will be displayed one below the other. To open or close an E-Mail that is part of a conversation, click on a free area between the sender and the date of receipt.
To open or close all E-Mail messages in the conversation, click the **Open/close all messages** icon  on the upper right side of the detail view.
 - If the E-Mail includes a quote from a previous E-Mail, you can display the quote by clicking the **Show quoted text** icon .

Options:

- To sort the E-Mail list, click on **Sort by** above the list.
Note: To reduce latency when loading the E-Mail list, only a certain percentage of the E-Mail messages in a folder will be loaded by the server if their number exceeds a defined limit. If browsing to the bottom of the list, the next part will be loaded.
- In order to select a layout, click on **View** in the tool bar.
- When having selected the **List** view, a list of all E-Mail messages in the folder will be shown in the display area. If clicking on an E-Mail, the E-Mail's detail view will be displayed.
To open the list view again or to browse the E-Mail messages, use the icons above the detail view.
- You can open the E-Mail in a window by double-clicking on the E-Mail in the list.

Note: Depending on the configuration, the content of very large E-Mail messages might be displayed incompletely. In this case, you will receive an E-Mail with a link. In order to completely display the E-Mail, click on the link.

Tip: In the E-Mail settings, you can define whether a notification sound is to be played for incoming E-Mail Messages.

User interface:

- [The E-Mail folder view \(p. 58\)](#)
- [The E-Mail detail view \(p. 61\)](#)
- [The E-Mail list \(p. 60\)](#)
- [The E-Mail pop-up \(p. 62\)](#)

Related topics:





- [Working with tabs \(p. 79\)](#)
- [Viewing or Saving email Attachments \(p. 65\)](#)
- [Showing the email source \(p. 82\)](#)
- [Marking email messages as read or unread \(p. 80\)](#)
- [Categorising E-Mail messages \(p. 81\)](#)
- [Searching for E-Mail Messages \(p. 95\)](#)
- [Using Unified Mail \(p. 88\)](#)
- [Settings for receiving E-Mail messages. \(p. 99\)](#)
- [Creating new rules for the subject and the sender \(p. 93\)](#)
- [Navigating within the folder structure \(p. 241\)](#)
- [Using a Whitelist \(p. 267\)](#)

5.3 Viewing or Saving email Attachments

The file names of E-Mail attachments are displayed in the detail view. Depending on the configuration, the following functions are available:

- view or download attachments or save attachments in Drive
- edit an attached document, start an attached presentation
- view all attachments from sent or received E-Mail Messages in the Drive app

How to use the email attachment functions:

1. Select an E-Mail with one or multiple attachments.
To display the attachments click the **Attachment** icon  above the E-Mail content in the detail view. The attachments will be displayed as preview or as a list.
To toggle the view, click the **Toggle preview** icon  or  on the right side.
2. To apply a function to all attachments, click on a button next to the **Attachment** icon .
3. In order to apply a function to a specific attachment, enable the list view. Click on an attachment.
To display an attachment in the Viewer, enable the preview view. Click on an attachment.

Note: Depending on the configuration, attachments will be checked for viruses before being downloaded.

- If no virus is found, the attachments will be downloaded without any further notification.
- If a virus scan was not possible or a virus was found, a window with a respective warning opens. In this case you can cancel the download.

How to view all your E-Mails' attachments in the Drive app:

Note: Depending on the configuration, this function might not be available.

1. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click on **View** in the tool bar. Click on **All attachments**.
 - Click on **View all attachments** in the folder view.The Drive app opens. The **My attachments** folder shows all attachments of all E-Mail messages that have been sent or received by you.
2. You can use the Drive functions.

User interface:

[The E-Mail detail view \(p. 61\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)

5.4 Sending email messages

Learn how to send an E-Mail and about the functions available for customising the E-Mail content:

- [Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)
- [Selecting contacts from an address book \(p. 68\)](#)
- [Selecting sender address \(p. 69\)](#)
- [Adding attachments \(p. 70\)](#)
- [Sending attachments as a link \(p. 71\)](#)
- [Using signatures \(p. 71\)](#)
- [Replying to email messages \(p. 73\)](#)
- [Forwarding E-Mail messages \(p. 73\)](#)
- [Automatically forwarding email messages \(p. 74\)](#)
- [Sending an E-Mail to appointment participants \(p. 74\)](#)
- [Sending a vacation notice automatically \(p. 75\)](#)

User interface:


- [The E-Mail tool bar \(p. 57\)](#)
- [The E-Mail list \(p. 60\)](#)
- [The E-Mail detail view \(p. 61\)](#)

Related topics:




- [Using E-Mail drafts \(p. 82\)](#)

5.4.1 Sending a new email

How to send a new email:

1. Click on **Compose** in the tool bar.
2. Enter the recipients' E-Mail addresses in the **To** field.
 - While entering the recipients, matching suggestions will be displayed. To accept a suggestion, click on it.
 - To select contacts from an address book, click the **Select contact** icon  on the right side of the input field.
3. To send a copy to other recipients, click on **CC** or **BCC** on the upper right side.
 - If the recipients are to see who gets a copy of the E-Mail, enter the recipients in the **CC** field.
 - If the recipients are not to see who gets a copy of the E-Mail, enter the recipients in the **BCC** field.
4. Enter a subject. Enter the E-Mail text.
5. Click on **Send**.

Options:

- With drag and drop you can move the recipients between the fields **To**, **CC** and **BCC**. In the E-Mail settings, you can determine whether each outgoing E-Mail will also be sent as a blind copy to a specific E-Mail address.
- To format the E-Mail text or to enter images, use the formatting bar below the text.
 - If the formatting bar is not displayed, click the **Options** icon  in the button bar. Enable **HTML**. Enable the **Show tool bar** icon  in the button bar. You can define default values for the font style, size and color in the E-Mail settings.
 - To enter images at the current cursor position, drag one or several images from a file browser or from the desktop to the E-Mail text input field. To remove an image, use the context menu.
- If clicking the **Options** icon  in the button bar, you can use additional options:
 - attach your signature
 - set the priority
 - attach your vCard
 - request a read receipt

User interface:

[The E-Mail editing window \(p. 63\)](#)

Subordinated actions:

[Selecting contacts from an address book \(p. 68\)](#)

[Selecting sender address \(p. 69\)](#)

[Adding attachments \(p. 70\)](#)


[Sending attachments as a link \(p. 71\)](#)

[Using signatures \(p. 71\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Replying to email messages \(p. 73\)](#)
- [Forwarding E-Mail messages \(p. 73\)](#)
- [Automatically forwarding email messages \(p. 74\)](#)
- [Sending an E-Mail to appointment participants \(p. 74\)](#)
- [Sending a vacation notice automatically \(p. 75\)](#)
- [Sending encrypted E-Mail messages \(p. 280\)](#)
- [Sending contacts as vCard \(p. 125\)](#)
- [Sending Email Messages from within an address book \(p. 125\)](#)
- [Settings for composing E-Mail messages \(p. 100\)](#)

5.4.2 Selecting contacts from an address book

You can select contacts from an address book in the *Select contacts* window. The window opens if you click the **Select contacts** icon  while:

- selecting the recipient when sending an E-Mail
- adding participants to an appointment or task
- inviting persons to a share

How to select contacts from an address book in the *Select contacts* window:

1. The following possibilities are available for finding a specific contact:
 - Enter a name in **Search**.
 - To view the contacts of a specific address book, click on **All folders**. Select an address book from the list. Depending on the configuration, you can select a department from the list.
2. Select at least one contact. The selected items will be displayed below the list. To undo the selection, click on **Clear selection**.
You can also use your system's multi-selection functions.
3. In confirm your selection of selected contacts, click on **Select**.

Superordinate actions:

- [Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)
- [Creating new distribution lists \(p. 116\)](#)
- [Adding participants or resources \(p. 156\)](#)
- [Using the scheduling view \(p. 158\)](#)
- [Adding participants to a task \(p. 194\)](#)
- [Sharing data \(p. 246\)](#)

5.4.3 Selecting sender address

If sending an E-Mail, you can set the sender address to be shown to the recipient, in the E-Mail editing window.

How to select your sender address:

1. Click on the sender address next to **From:** in the E-Mail editing window. A menu opens.
2. If you have set up external E-Mail accounts, you can use those addresses as sender addresses. Select an E-Mail address from the list.
3. You can define the name to be displayed with your E-Mail addresses. To do so, proceed as follows:
 - a. Click on **Edit name**. The *Edit real names* window opens. The window displays the names that are preset in the account settings.
 - b. Enable the checkbox of the name that you want to edit. Edit the name. Click on **Save**.
In order to display the sender addresses without names, disable **Show names**.

Superordinated action:




[Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)

Related topics:

[Adding E-Mail Accounts \(p. 97\)](#)

5.4.4 Adding attachments

How to add attachments to an E-Mail in the E-Mail editing window:

1. Select the files to be sent as attachments.
 - To send a local file as attachment, click the **Add local file** icon  in the button bar. Select at least one file.
You can also add an attachment by dragging one or several files from a file browser or from the desktop to the E-Mail window.
 - Depending on the configuration, you can send the current version of a file from the Drive app as an attachment. To do so, click the **Add from Drive** icon  in the button bar.
Open a folder in the *Add attachments* window. Select at least one file.
2. You can remove an attachment if required. To do so hover over an attachment. Click the **Remove attachment** icon .

Note: An E-Mail attachment can consume more than 25% of storage space than a locally saved file.

Options:

- Depending on the configuration, attached images can be minimised if they exceed a specified number of pixels or a specified file size. To do so, select an entry next to **Image size** on the bottom right side of the attachments
Note: Images can only be minimised directly after having been uploaded. If you open an E-Mail draft or re-load the E-Mail editing window, attached images can no longer be minimised.
- Depending on the configuration, attachments will not be sent when having reached a certain size limit. In this case, the attachment will be saved in the **E-Mail attachments** folder in the Drive app. The E-Mail includes a link to the attachment.

Superordinated action:

[Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)

Related topics:




[Sending attachments as a link \(p. 71\)](#)

5.4.5 Sending attachments as a link


This function allows sending large attachments by E-Mail. This is how it works:

- The attachments will be uploaded to a new folder below **Drive Mail** in the Drive app. The name of this folder corresponds to the E-Mail subject. The folder will be shared with a public link.
- The E-Mail recipients will receive a link for downloading the attachments.

How to send attachments as a link in the E-Mail editing window:

1. Select the files to be sent as attachments.
 - To send a local file as attachment, click on **Attachments** icon  in the button bar. Click on **Add local file**. Select at least one file.
You can also add an attachment by dragging one or several files from a file browser or from the desktop to the E-Mail window.
 - To use a current file version from the Drive app as an attachment, click the **Add from Drive** icon  in the button bar.
Open a folder in the *Add attachments* window. Select at least one file.
2. You can remove an attachment if required. To do so hover over an attachment. Click the **Remove attachment** icon .
3. Click on **Use Drive Mail**. The **Options** button will be displayed.
Click on **Options**. The *Drive Mail options* window opens.
 - To set the expiration date for the public link, click on an entry below **Expiration**.
If you select an expiration date, you can let the attachment be deleted after the expiration date. To do so, enable **delete if expired**.
Note: Depending on the configuration, those functions are optional or mandatory.
 - To protect the public link with the attachments with a password, enable **Use password**. Enter a password. To view the password while entering it, click the icon on the right side in the input field.
 - To receive notifications about certain actions, enable one or several entries below **E-mail notifications**.
Note: Depending on the configuration, this function might not be available.

Notes:

- Depending on the configuration, there might be a maximum file size for attachments that can be sent as a link.
- In the **Sent objects** folder, the E-Mail is marked with the icon . When viewing the E-Mail, the following information is displayed at the top of the E-Mail text:
 - A link to the folder containing the attachment.
 - Information about the expiration date and a possibly used password.
 - A list of the attachments' file names.

Superordinated action:

[Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)

Related topics:



[Adding attachments \(p. 70\)](#)

5.4.6 Using signatures


An E-Mail signature is text that is automatically entered in the E-Mail when being composed. It is typically used for inserting the name, company, and contact address at the bottom of the E-Mail text. You can create signatures in the plain text or HTML format. The following functions are available:

- create new signature, edit existing signatures, set default signatures
- add a signature to the E-Mail text

How to create or edit a signature:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **E-Mail** in the side bar. Click on **Signatures**.
The existing signatures will be shown in the display area.
3. To add a new signature, proceed as follows:
 - a. In the display area, click on **Add new signature**. The *Add signature* window opens.
 - b. Enter a name for the signature. Enter the text for the signature.
Define whether the signature is to be entered below or above the E-Mail text.
Click on **Save**.
4. To edit an existing signature, the following options are available:
 - In order to edit a signature's text, click on **Edit** next to the signature.
 - In order to delete a signature, click the **Delete** icon  next to the signature.In **Default signature for new messages** and in **Default signature for replies or forwards**, you can define the signatures to be used as default.

How to add a signature to the E-Mail text in the E-Mail editing window:

1. Click the **Options** icon  in the button bar.
2. Select a signature from the list.

Superordinated action:



[Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)

5.4.7 Replying to email messages

When replying to an E-Mail, some of the E-Mail's input fields are pre-filled:


- The sender of the E-Mail and additional recipients of the E-Mail will be automatically entered as recipients of the reply E-Mail.
- The E-Mail subject will be entered in the subject field of the reply E-Mail. The subject will be preceded with the text "Re: ".
- The E-Mail text will be entered in the forwarded E-Mail. Each cited line will be marked at the beginning.

How to reply to an email:

1. Select an E-Mail.
2. Click the **Reply to sender** icon  in the tool bar. To also reply to all other recipients click the **Reply to all recipients** icon .

You can also use one of the following methods:

- Click on the **Reply** or **Reply all** button in the detail view.
- Use the context menu in the E-Mail list.

To send a new E-Mail to the sender and the other recipients, click the **More actions** icon  in the detail view. Click on **Send new e-mail**.

3. Fill in the details for sending the E-Mail.

Related topics:

[Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)

[Forwarding E-Mail messages \(p. 73\)](#)


5.4.8 Forwarding E-Mail messages

If you forward an E-Mail, some of the E-Mail's input fields are pre-filled:

- The subject of the E-Mail will be entered as the subject of the forwarded E-Mail. The subject will be preceded with the text "Fwd: ".
- The E-Mail text will be entered in the forwarded E-Mail. The text is preceded with the following details:
 - The header "Original message"
 - Sender, recipient, date, and subject of the original message

If you forward multiple E-Mail messages, the selected E-Mail messages are sent as attachments in EML format.

How to forward an email:

1. Select one or several E-Mail messages.
2. Click the **Forward** icon  in the tool bar.
You can also use one of the following methods:
 - Click on the **Forward** button in the detail view.
 - Use the context menu in the E-Mail list.
3. Select one or more recipients.
4. Fill in the details for sending the E-Mail.

Related topics:


[Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)

[Automatically forwarding email messages \(p. 74\)](#)

5.4.9 Automatically forwarding email messages

You can let email messages be automatically forwarded to another address.

How to automatically forward email messages:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **Email** in the side bar.
Click on **Auto forward ...** in the display area. The *Auto forward* window opens.
3. Enable the **Auto forward** button .
Enter the email address to which you want to forward the messages.
In order to keep a copy of the E-Mail, enable **Keep a copy of the message**.
The auto forwarding will be entered as E-Mail filter. If additional filter rules are to be applied after the auto forwarding, enable **Process subsequent rules**. You can also edit the auto forwarding in the E-Mail filter settings.
4. Click on **Apply changes**.



Related topics:

- [Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)
- [Replying to email messages \(p. 73\)](#)
- [Forwarding E-Mail messages \(p. 73\)](#)
- [Sending a vacation notice automatically \(p. 75\)](#)
- [Using E-Mail Filters \(p. 89\)](#)
- [Settings for receiving E-Mail messages. \(p. 99\)](#)

5.4.10 Sending an E-Mail to appointment participants

You can send an E-Mail to all appointment participants.

How to send an E-Mail to all appointment participants:

1. Depending on the selected view, the following options are available in the Calendar:
 - In a calendar view, click on an appointment with multiple participants. In the pop-up, click the **More actions** icon . Click on **Send e-mail to all participants**.
 - In the list view, double-click on an appointment with multiple participants. The appointment will be displayed in a window. Click the **More actions** icon . Click on **Send e-mail to all participants**.
2. Fill in the details for sending the E-Mail.

Related topics:

- [Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)

5.4.11 Sending a vacation notice automatically

A vacation notice informs the sender of an E-Mail that you will not retrieve your E-Mails for a specific period of time. You can set the following:

- the subject and text of the vacation notice
- the time frame when the vacation notice is active
- the E-Mail addresses for which the vacation notice is active

How to create and activate a vacation notice:

1. Click on **View** in the tool bar. Click on **Vacation notice** at the bottom.
You can also use the **Vacation notice** button in the E-Mail settings.
The *Vacation notice* window opens.
2. Enable the **vacation notice** button .
3. To define the time range for sending the vacation notice, enable **Send vacation notice during this time only**. Set the start and end date.
Note: Depending on the configuration, this setting might not be available.
4. Enter a subject and a text for the vacation notice.
5. In order to display all options, click on **Show advanced options**.
 - You can specify an interval for sending a vacation notice if there are several E-Mail messages from the same sender.
 - You can specify the sender address to be used for sending the vacation notice.
 - The vacation notice will be sent if messages are reaching your primary E-Mail address. You can also activate a vacation notice if messages are reaching your other E-Mail addresses.
6. Click on **Apply changes**.

If a vacation notice is active, the following is displayed:

- On the E-Mail settings page, the **Vacation notice** button is marked with an additional icon.
- In the E-Mail app, a notification is displayed above the E-Mail list. If clicking on the notification, the *Vacation notice* window opens.

Tip: The vacation notice will be entered as E-Mail filter. You can also edit the vacation notice in the E-Mail filter settings.

Related topics:

- [Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)
- [Replying to email messages \(p. 73\)](#)
- [Forwarding E-Mail messages \(p. 73\)](#)
- [Automatically forwarding email messages \(p. 74\)](#)
- [Using E-Mail Filters \(p. 89\)](#)
- [Settings for receiving E-Mail messages. \(p. 99\)](#)

5.5 Calling the Sender or Another Recipient

You can launch an audio or video conference with an E-Mail's sender or recipient by calling the sender or recipient.

Prerequisite: You have set up an account with an audio or video conference provider, e.g. Zoom.

How to call an E-Mail's sender or recipient:

1. Select an E-Mail.
2. Click on the sender or on a recipient in the detail view. A pop-up opens.
An icon below the name indicates the contact's presence status.
3. In the pop-up, click the **Call** icon. In the menu, click on an audio or video conference provider, e.g. Zoom. The window for calling the contact opens. Click on **Call**.

User interface:

[The E-Mail pop-up \(p. 62\)](#)

Related topics:

[Calling Contacts \(p. 119\)](#)

[Calling Appointment Participants \(p. 164\)](#)

[Scheduling audio/video conferences \(p. 153\)](#)


[Setting up and Configuring the Zoom Integration \(p. 44\)](#)

[Setting the presence status \(p. 46\)](#)

5.6 Adding E-Mail Folders

With E-Mail folders you can organise your E-Mail Messages, e.g. by separately saving E-Mail Messages for customers or projects. Learn how to create additional E-Mail folders below your primary E-Mail account.

How to create a new E-Mail folder:

1. Select the folder in which you want to create the new sub-folder in the folder view.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Add new folder**.
A window opens.
3. Enter a name. Click on **Add**.

User interface:

[The E-Mail folder view \(p. 58\)](#)

Related topics:

[Moving or copying E-Mail messages \(p. 80\)](#)

[Managing E-Mail messages \(p. 78\)](#)

[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

5.7 Managing E-Mail messages

Learn how to organise your E-Mail Messages and about the E-Mail actions available:

- [Working with tabs \(p. 79\)](#)
- [Moving or copying E-Mail messages \(p. 80\)](#)
- [Marking email messages as read or unread \(p. 80\)](#)
- [Collecting addresses \(p. 81\)](#)
- [Categorising E-Mail messages \(p. 81\)](#)
- [Showing the email source \(p. 82\)](#)
- [Using E-Mail drafts \(p. 82\)](#)
- [Creating E-Mail reminders \(p. 83\)](#)
- [Adding an E-Mail to the Portal \(p. 83\)](#)
- [Saving email messages \(p. 83\)](#)
- [Importing email messages \(p. 84\)](#)
- [Printing email messages \(p. 84\)](#)
- [Archiving E-Mail messages \(p. 85\)](#)
- [Deleting E-Mail messages \(p. 86\)](#)
- [Cleaning up E-Mail folders \(p. 87\)](#)
- [Using Unified Mail \(p. 88\)](#)

User interface:

- [The E-Mail tool bar \(p. 57\)](#)
- [The E-Mail list \(p. 60\)](#)
- [The E-Mail detail view \(p. 61\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Adding E-Mail Folders \(p. 77\)](#)

5.7.1 Working with tabs


Tabs allow you to save incoming E-Mail messages in the **Inbox** folder separated by senders. The following options are available:

- enable or disable tabs
- assign incoming E-Mail messages to a tab
- edit the tabs view

How to enable or disable the usage of tabs:

1. Click on **View** in the tool bar.
2. Enable or disable the **Use categories** checkbox below Inbox.

How to assign incoming E-Mail messages in the inbox to categories:

1. Select the **Inbox** folder in the folder view.
E-Mail Messages that have not yet been assigned to a category, are displayed in the **General** category.
2. Drag an E-Mail from the list to a category in the categories bar and drop it there.
You can also select an E-Mail. Click the **Set category** icon  in the tool bar. Select a category from the menu.
A pop-up window notifies you that the E-Mail has been moved to the category.
3. In order to finish the process, do one of the following:
 - In order to only move the selected E-Mail to the category, close the pop-up window.
 - In order to move all existing and future incoming E-Mail messages from this sender to the category, click on **Move all messages**.

How to edit the tab view:

1. Click on **View** in the tool bar. Click on **Configure** below Inbox.
You can also double-click or right-click on a category in the categories bar.
The *Configure categories* window opens.
2. To enable or disable a tab, enable or disable the respective checkbox.
To rename a tab, edit the respective text.
Note: Some tabs cannot be edited.
In order to hide the categories bar, click on **Disable categories**.
3. Click on **Save**.

User interface:

[The E-Mail categories bar \(p. 59\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)


5.7.2 Moving or copying E-Mail messages

You can move or copy E-Mail messages to another E-Mail folder. The following options are available:

- move or copy individual E-Mail messages or a complete E-Mail conversation to another folder
- move all E-Mail messages in an E-Mail folder

Prerequisite: You need to have the appropriate permissions to create objects in the target folder.

How to move or copy an E-Mail:

1. Select one or several E-Mail messages.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar or in the detail view. Select **Move** or **Copy**.
You can also use the context menu in the E-Mail list.
A window opens.
3. Select a folder. You can also create a new folder.

Tips:


- To move E-Mail Messages from a specific sender to a folder, you can create a new rule when moving E-Mail Messages.
- You can also move the selected objects by dragging the objects from the folder view to a folder.
- In order to move all E-Mail messages from a folder, click on **All** above the list. Select **Move all messages**.

Related topics:

[Adding E-Mail Folders \(p. 77\)](#)




[Creating a new rule when moving \(p. 92\)](#)

5.7.3 Marking email messages as read or unread

Unread E-Mail messages are marked with the Unread icon . The following options are available:

- mark single E-Mail messages as read or unread
- mark all E-Mail messages in an E-Mail folder as read

How to mark an E-Mail as unread or read:

1. Select one or several E-Mail messages.
2. Click the **More actions** icon . Select **Mark as unread** or **Mark as read**.
Or:
 - For single E-Mail messages, click the **Mark as unread** icon  or the **Mark as read** icon  in the detail view.
 - Use the context menu in the E-Mail list.

Tip: To mark all E-Mail messages in a folder as read, click on **All** above the list. Select **Mark all E-Mail messages as read**.

Related topics:

[Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)

5.7.4 Collecting addresses

You can collect E-Mail addresses by adding the addresses to an address book. The following options are available:

- Automatically collect new E-Mail addresses when sending or reading E-Mail messages by activating this function in the E-Mail settings.
- Manually adding email addresses to an address book

How to manually add an email address to an address book:

1. Select an E-Mail.
2. Click on the sender's or a recipient's name in the detail view.
Click on **Add to address book** in the pop-up.

Note: This function is only available for new contacts.

Related topics:

[Settings for receiving E-Mail messages. \(p. 99\)](#)



[Creating a new contact \(p. 113\)](#)

5.7.5 Categorising E-Mail messages

Depending on the configuration, you have several options for categorizing E-Mail messages. The following options are available:

- a coloured label
- a flag

How to categorise an E-Mail:

1. Select one or several E-Mail messages.
2. To add a coloured label, click the **Set colour** icon  in the tool bar or in the detail view. Select a colour.
In order to remove the label, again click the icon in the tool bar or in the detail view. Select **None**.
3. To add a flag, click the **Flag** icon  in the tool bar or in the detail view.
You can also use the context menu in the E-Mail list.
To remove the flag, use one of the following methods:
 - Again click the icon in the tool bar or in the detail view.
 - Use the context menu in the E-Mail list.

Tip: To sort E-Mail messages by flags, click on **Sort by** above the list.


Related topics:

[Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)

5.7.6 Showing the email source

The email source contains the complete content of an email i.e.: the complete email header data.

How to display the email source:

1. Select an E-Mail.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar or in the detail view. Select **View source**.
You can also use the context menu in the E-Mail list.

Related topics:

- [Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)
- [Adding a condition \(p. 91\)](#)


5.7.7 Using E-Mail drafts

While composing an E-Mail, the E-Mail is automatically saved as an E-Mail draft in regular intervals. The following options are available:

- Edit or send an E-Mail draft.
- Edit or send a copy of an E-Mail draft.

The E-Mail draft will be deleted after it has been sent. To keep the E-Mail draft, you have to send a copy.

How to use an E-Mail draft:

1. Select an E-Mail in the **Drafts** folder.
2. Click on **Edit draft** or on **Edit copy** in the tool bar.
Edit the content.
3. In order to finish editing, click on **Cancel** or the **Close** icon . Click on **Save as draft** in the next window.
To send the draft or the draft's copy, click on **Send**.


Related topics:

- [Sending email messages \(p. 66\)](#)

5.7.8 Creating E-Mail reminders

You can activate a reminder for an E-Mail. This function creates a task and reminds you of the due date.

How to create an E-Mail reminder:

1. Select an E-Mail.
2. Click the **More actions** icon . Select **Reminder**.
Note: When having selected an E-Mail conversation, this function is only available in the detail view, not in the tool bar.
3. Complete the details in the *Remind me* window.

Result: A task will be created. A button is shown below the task text. If clicking on this button, the original E-Mail will be displayed.


Related topics:

[Creating new tasks \(p. 193\)](#)

5.7.9 Adding an E-Mail to the Portal

You can add an E-Mail as widget to the Portal.

How to add an email to the portal:

1. Select an E-Mail.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar or in the detail view. Select **Add to portal**.
Note: When having selected an E-Mail conversation, this function is only available in the detail view, not in the tool bar.


Related topics:

[Adding Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)

5.7.10 Saving email messages

You can save an E-Mail as a text file. The text file has the file extension EML. If you select multiple E-Mail messages, an EML file will be created for each E-Mail. The EML files will be saved as a zip archive then.

How to save an email:

1. Select one or several E-Mail messages.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar or in the detail view. Select **Save as file**.
3. Fill in the details for saving the file.

Related topics:

[Importing email messages \(p. 84\)](#)

[Downloading Personal Data \(p. 261\)](#)

5.7.11 Importing email messages

You can import an email that is available in the EML format.

How to import an email:

1. Open the E-Mail folder to which you want to import the E-Mail.
2. Drag the eml file from a file browser or the desktop to the E-Mail list.


Related topics:

[Saving email messages \(p. 83\)](#)

5.7.12 Printing email messages

You can print the content of an E-Mail or several E-Mail messages.

How to print an E-Mail's content:

1. Select one or several E-Mail messages.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar or in the detail view. Click on **Print** in the menu.
You can also use the context menu in the E-Mail list.
A window with a print preview opens.
3. If required, change the printer settings. Click on the **Print** button.

Related topics:


[Archiving E-Mail messages \(p. 85\)](#)

5.7.13 Archiving E-Mail messages


When archiving E-Mail messages, those E-Mail messages are moved to the **Archive** folder. The **Archive** folder contains a separate subfolder for each calendar year. The archived E-Mail messages are saved to those subfolders sorted by the year of receipt. The **Archive** folder is created as soon as you initially use this function. The following options are available:

- archive a folder's E-Mail messages that are older than 90 days
- archive single E-Mail messages

How to archive an E-Mail folder's content:

1. Select an E-Mail folder in the folder view.
2. The following options are available:
 - Click on **All** above the list. Select **Archive all messages**.
 - Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Archive all messages**.
3. In the *Archive messages* window click on **Archive**.

How to archive individual E-Mail messages:

1. Select one or several E-Mail messages.
2. Click the **Archive** icon  in the tool bar.
You can also use one of the following methods:
 - Press the [a] key on the keyboard.
 - Use the context menu in the E-Mail list.

Related topics:

[Printing email messages \(p. 84\)](#)


5.7.14 Deleting E-Mail messages

The following options are available:

- Delete individual E-Mail messages or entire E-Mail conversations. By default, the E-Mail messages are moved to the Trash folder.
- Delete all E-Mail messages in an E-Mail folder. By default, the E-Mail messages are moved to the Trash folder.
- Recover deleted E-Mail messages from the trash.
- Permanently delete E-Mail messages from the trash. You can also permanently delete all E-Mail messages from the trash by emptying the trash.


Warning: If you enable the E-Mail settings option **Permanently remove deleted e-mail messages** you will not be able to recover deleted E-Mail messages. It is recommended that you not use this setting.

How to delete an E-Mail:

1. Select one or several E-Mail messages.
2. Click the **Delete** icon  in the tool bar.
You can also use one of the following methods:
 - Press the [Del] or [Backspace] key on the keyboard.
 - Use the **Delete** button in the detail view.
 - Use the context menu in the E-Mail list.


Result: The E-Mail will be moved to the **Trash** folder.

How to delete all email messages in a folder:

1. In the folder view, select the folder which E-Mail messages you want to delete.
2. The following options are available:
 - Click on **All** above the list. Select **Delete all messages**.
 - Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on the **Delete all messages** button.


Result: The E-Mail will be moved to the **Trash** folder.

How to recover deleted email messages:

1. Open the **Trash** folder in the folder view.
2. Select one or several E-Mail messages.
3. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Move**.
4. Select a folder in the *Move* window. Click on the **Move** button.

How to permanently delete an E-Mail:


Warning: Permanently deleted email messages **cannot** be recovered. Before permanently deleting an email, make sure you no longer need the email.

1. Open the **Trash** folder in the folder view.
2. Select one or several E-Mail messages.
3. Click the **Delete** icon  in the tool bar.

Result: The E-Mail is permanently deleted.

How to permanently delete the content of the Trash folder:

Warning: Permanently deleted email messages **cannot** be recovered. Before permanently deleting an email, make sure you no longer need the email.

1. Select the **Trash** folder in the folder view.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Empty folder**.
3. Confirm that you want to empty the folder.

Result: The objects in the trash are permanently deleted.

Related topics:

[Archiving E-Mail messages \(p. 85\)](#)

[Cleaning up E-Mail folders \(p. 87\)](#)


[Settings for receiving E-Mail messages. \(p. 99\)](#)

5.7.15 Cleaning up E-Mail folders

Depending on the E-Mail client's settings, E-Mail messages that you deleted from within an E-Mail client like Apple Mail, MS Outlook or Mozilla Thunderbird, might be deleted only after having signed out from the client. In the meantime, those E-Mail messages will be shown as crossed out in the groupware. To delete those E-Mail messages clean up the E-Mail folder.

Note: Depending on the configuration, this function is not available as such E-Mail messages are not displayed.

How to clean up an E-Mail folder:

1. In the folder view, select the folder that you want to clean up.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Clean up**.

Related topics:

[Deleting E-Mail messages \(p. 86\)](#)


5.7.16 Using Unified Mail

With Unified Mail you can display E-Mail messages from multiple E-Mail accounts in one central folder. This gives you a quick overview of the multiple E-Mail accounts' inboxes. Unified Mail can be described as follows:

- In addition to an E-Mail account's inbox, the **Unified Mail** folder shows a further view for the account's E-Mail messages. The E-Mail messages actually exist only once.
- E-Mail messages in the Inbox's subfolders are not displayed in the **Unified Mail** folder.
- The E-Mail messages in the **Unified Mail** folder are marked with the E-Mail account's name in the list.

To use Unified Mail, enable the function for one or several E-Mail accounts.

How to activate Unified Mail for an email account:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Accounts**.
3. Click on **Edit** next to an E-Mail account in the display area. The settings are displayed in a pop-up.
4. Enable **Use Unified Mail for this account**.
Click on **Save** at the bottom of the pop-up.

Related topics:

[Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)

[Adding E-Mail Accounts \(p. 97\)](#)

[Viewing, editing, deleting accounts \(p. 260\)](#)

5.8 Using E-Mail Filters

E-Mail filters help you organise incoming E-Mail messages. An E-Mail filter consists of one or several rules. By setting rules you can e.g. trigger the following actions:

- The E-Mail is moved to a specific E-Mail folder.
- The E-Mail is forwarded to another E-Mail address.
- The E-Mail is marked as read.

In order to use E-Mail filters, proceed as follows:

- Create E-Mail folders.
- Create one or several rules.
- Specify an order for the rules.
- Set if subsequent rules are to be processed when a rule matches.

The following options are available:

- [Creating new rules \(p. 90\)](#)
- [Adding a condition \(p. 91\)](#)
- [Adding an action \(p. 92\)](#)
- [Creating a new rule when moving \(p. 92\)](#)
- [Creating new rules for the subject and the sender \(p. 93\)](#)
- [Changing a rule \(p. 93\)](#)
- [Applying a rule to existing E-Mail messages \(p. 94\)](#)

Note: For the following instructions and examples, it is assumed that the complete range of E-Mail filter functions is available. Depending on the configuration, some functions might not be available.

Related topics:


- [Automatically forwarding email messages \(p. 74\)](#)
- [Sending a vacation notice automatically \(p. 75\)](#)

5.8.1 Creating new rules

A rule contains:

- a name,
- one or several conditions,
- one or several actions. You can specify whether one or all conditions are to be met in order to process the actions.

How to create a new rule:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **E-Mail** in the side bar. Click on **Filter rules**.
3. In the display area, click on **Add new rule**. The *Create new rule* window opens.
 - Enter a rule name.
 - Click on **Add condition**. Make a selection from the drop-down menu. Complete the condition details.
 - Click on **Add action**. Select an action from the menu. Complete the action details.
4. You can set whether subsequent rules are to be processed if the rule is met. To do so, enable or disable **Process subsequent rules**.
5. To complete the creation, you can do the following:
 - To apply the rule to future incoming E-Mail messages, click on **Save**.
 - To apply the new rule to future incoming E-Mail messages and to existing E-Mail messages, click on **Save and apply**. Select the folder containing the E-Mail messages to which the rule should be applied.
Note: Some actions cannot be executed if applying a rule to existing E-Mail messages.

Subordinated actions:

- [Adding a condition \(p. 91\)](#)
- [Adding an action \(p. 92\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Creating a new rule when moving \(p. 92\)](#)
- [Creating new rules for the subject and the sender \(p. 93\)](#)
- [Changing a rule \(p. 93\)](#)
- [Applying a rule to existing E-Mail messages \(p. 94\)](#)

5.8.2 Adding a condition

A condition helps to define the E-Mail messages to which the action should be applied. You can set one or multiple conditions.

How to add a condition in the *Create new rule* window:

1. Click on **Add condition**. Make a selection from the drop-down menu. Note the following:
 - In order to use an E-Mail part that is not contained in the list, select **Header**. Enter a header entry in the Name input field. You can read an E-Mail's header by displaying the source data.
 - In order to consider the **BCC** part, select **Envelope - To**. Envelope includes the E-Mail recipients entered in the **To**, **CC** or **BCC** field.
 - In order to use a part of the E-Mail content in the condition, select **Content**.
 - In order to use the date of receipt in the condition, select **Current Date**.
2. Select a criterion from the drop-down next to the E-Mail part. Enter an argument in the input field.
3. You can add additional conditions. You can then specify whether one or all conditions are to be met in order to process the actions. To do so, click on **Apply rule if all conditions are met**.

As soon as there is a condition, you can create nested conditions. To do so, click on **Add condition**. Select **Nested condition**.

To delete a condition, click the **Delete** icon  next to the condition.

Example: The following details are used for the condition:

- E-Mail part "Subject"
- Criterion "Is exactly"
- Argument "minutes"

In this case it would verify whether the subject of an E-Mail exactly matches the argument "minutes". Additional examples how to filter E-Mail messages using the subject:

- Criterion: "contains"
The condition is met if the subject contains the characters in the argument.
Example: The argument is "minutes".
 - The condition is met for the subject "minutes".
 - The condition is also met for the subject "meeting minutes".
- Criterion: "matches"
The condition is met if the subject exactly matches the characters in the argument. The character string can contain wildcards.
Example: The argument is "minutes*". The "*" character is a wildcard for any characters.
 - The condition is met for the subject "minutes".
 - The condition is not met for the subject "meeting minutes".
- Criterion: "Regex"
The condition is met if the subject contains the characters provided by the regular expression in the argument. Regular expressions allow complex requests. More information can be found on respective sites on the Web. The following, very simple regular expression should give an insight to the topic.
Example: The argument is "organi(z|s)ation". The expression "(z|s)" stands for either the "z" or the "s" character.
 - The condition is met for the subject "minutes".
 - The condition is also met for the subject "organisation".
 - The condition is not met for the subject "Organic".

Superordinated action:

[Creating new rules \(p. 90\)](#)

[Encrypting incoming E-Mail messages by using a filter rule \(p. 281\)](#)

Related topics:


[Adding an action \(p. 92\)](#)

[Showing the email source \(p. 82\)](#)

5.8.3 Adding an action

Use an action to define what happens with an E-Mail that matches the conditions. You can set one or multiple actions.

How to add an action in the *Create new rule* window:

1. Click on **Add action**. Select an action from the menu.
2. Depending on the action, additional buttons and inputs fields are displayed. Use such functions to complete the action.
3. You can add additional actions.
To delete an action, click the **Delete** icon  next to the action.

Superordinated action:

[Creating new rules \(p. 90\)](#)

[Encrypting incoming E-Mail messages by using a filter rule \(p. 281\)](#)



Related topics:

[Adding a condition \(p. 91\)](#)

5.8.4 Creating a new rule when moving

You can create a new rule when moving an E-Mail to another folder. Incoming E-Mail Messages from this sender will then be moved to this folder automatically.

How to create a new rule when moving an E-Mail

1. Select an E-Mail.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Move**.
You can also use the **More actions** icon  in the detail view.
Select a folder in the *Move* window. Click on the **Move** button.
3. Enable **Create filter rule**. A note with details about the filter is displayed.
Click on the **Move** button. The *Create new rule* window opens.
4. Enter a rule name. You can adjust the conditions or actions. Click on **Save**.
The E-Mail will be moved. The new rule will be created.

Related topics:

[Creating new rules \(p. 90\)](#)

[Changing a rule \(p. 93\)](#)


[Applying a rule to existing E-Mail messages \(p. 94\)](#)

[Moving or copying E-Mail messages \(p. 80\)](#)

5.8.5 Creating new rules for the subject and the sender

You can easily create a new rule for an E-Mail's subject and sender when viewing the E-Mail in the detail view.

How to create a new rule for the subject and the sender:

1. Select an E-Mail.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the detail view. Click on **Create filter rule**. The *Create new rule* window opens.
3. Enter a rule name. You can adjust the conditions.
Set an action.
4. In order to save the rule, click on **Save**.
To save the rule and apply it to existing E-Mail messages, click on **Save and apply**. Select the folder containing the E-Mail messages to which the rule should be applied.

Related topics:




- [Creating new rules \(p. 90\)](#)
- [Changing a rule \(p. 93\)](#)
- [Applying a rule to existing E-Mail messages \(p. 94\)](#)
- [Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)

5.8.6 Changing a rule

The following options are available:

- edit a rule's settings: name, condition, actions
- disable, enable, delete a rule
- change the activation order of the rules

How to change existing rules:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **E-Mail** in the side bar. Click on **Filter rules**.
3. To edit a rule's settings, click on **Edit** next to the rule. Change the settings in the *Edit rule* window.
4. To disable a rule, click on **Disable** next to the rule.
To enable a rule, click on **Enable** next to the rule.
5. To change the order, hover the mouse pointer over the **Move** icon  next to a rule. Drag the rule up or down and drop it in the appropriate place.
Note: This function is only available if there are at least two rules.
6. To delete a rule, click the **Delete** icon  next to the rule.

Related topics:


- [Creating new rules \(p. 90\)](#)
- [Creating a new rule when moving \(p. 92\)](#)
- [Creating new rules for the subject and the sender \(p. 93\)](#)
- [Applying a rule to existing E-Mail messages \(p. 94\)](#)

5.8.7 Applying a rule to existing E-Mail messages

You can filter existing E-Mail messages later by applying a rule to an E-Mail folder.

Note: Depending on the E-Mail server, this function might not be available.

How to apply a rule to existing E-Mail messages:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **E-Mail** in the side bar. Click on **Filter rules**.
3. Click on **Apply** next to the rule. Select the folder containing the E-Mail messages to which the rule should be applied.

Note: Some actions cannot be executed if applying a rule to existing E-Mail messages.

Options:

- You can also apply a rule to existing E-Mail messages while creating a new rule. To do so, click on **Save and apply** when creating the new rule. Select the folder containing the E-Mail messages to which the rule should be applied.

Related topics:

[Creating new rules \(p. 90\)](#)

[Creating a new rule when moving \(p. 92\)](#)

[Creating new rules for the subject and the sender \(p. 93\)](#)

5.9 Searching for E-Mail Messages

In order to search for specific E-Mail messages, you can use the following search criteria:

- search terms for subject, E-Mail text, sender, recipients, attachment name
- Search terms for a time range. Searches for E-Mail messages that you received within the time range. You define a valid time range with the following details.
 - The key words today, yesterday, last week, last month, last year
 - The key words for those time intervals: last 7 days, last 30 days, last 365 days
 - A day of the week, e.g. Monday
 - A specific month, e.g. July
 - A four digit date, e.g. 2015
 - A date, e.g. 1/31/2015
 - A date interval, e.g. 12/1/2014 - 1/31/2015
- folders that are to be searched
- only search for E-Mail Messages with an attachment

How to search for E-Mail messages:

1. Click on the **Search** input field. Enter a search term in the input field.
The search menu opens.
2. Define the data sources to be searched by clicking on an entry in the search menu.
 - If clicking on the search term or pressing enter, the following data sources are searched: sender, recipient, subject, E-Mail text
 - In order to only search in the subject, click on **in subject**.
Accordingly, you can limit the search to the E-Mail text or to attachment file names.
 - In order to search for senders or recipients matching the search term, click on a name. You can define whether to search the sender, recipients or both. To do so, click on **From ▼** next to the name.
 - In order to search for E-Mail Messages within a specific time range, use a valid time range as the search term.

The search results are displayed in the list that is shown in the display area. For each search result, the folder with the found object is displayed.
3. To select a folder for the search, click on the folder name next to the input field.
 - If you select **All folders**, all folders and sub-folders of the internal E-Mail account are searched.
Note: Depending on the E-Mail server, this function might not be available. In this case, only the current folder will be searched, no sub-folders.
 - If you select a specific folder or the folder of an external E-Mail account, only this folder is searched, but no subfolders.
4. To limit the search to E-Mail messages with an attachment, click on **Options ▼** next to the input field. Enable **Has attachment**.
5. To refine the search result, enter additional search terms: To remove a search term, click the **Remove** icon ✕ next to the search term.
6. In order to finish the search, click the **Cancel search** icon ⓧ in the input field.

User interface:

[The search bar \(p. 23\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)

5.10 Adding E-Mail Accounts

As default, you use your primary E-Mail account in the groupware. If you use additional E-Mail accounts like e.g. GMail, you can add those accounts to the groupware. This allows you to access those accounts' E-Mail messages from within the groupware.

How to add an E-Mail account:

1. Click on **Add E-Mail Account** in the folder view. The *Add E-Mail Account* window opens.
2. Click an icon. The next procedure depends on the E-Mail account provider.
 - For some providers, a new browser window opens. Log in with your credentials to grant access to the E-Mail account.
 - If the provider asks you for the permission to access the data, grant this permission.
 - For some providers, enter your credentials in the *Add E-Mail Account* window. Then, click on **Add**. You can also manually enter the required data by clicking on **Manually**.
3. If the E-Mail messages in this account are also to be shown in the **Unified Mail** folder, enable **Use unified mail for this account**.

Note: Depending on the configuration, this function might not be available.

An entry for the E-Mail account appears in the folder view. The entry contains this account's E-Mail folders. Open one of those folders to do the following:

- read this account's E-Mail messages
- send E-Mail messages from this account

If the access to the E-Mail account fails, a warning icon will be displayed next to E-Mail account's name. Depending on the E-Mail provider, you will get troubleshooting notes when clicking the warning icon.

User interface:

[The E-Mail folder view \(p. 58\)](#)

Related topics:

[Using Unified Mail \(p. 88\)](#)

[Selecting sender address \(p. 69\)](#)

[Editing the primary E-Mail account \(p. 259\)](#)

[Viewing, editing, deleting accounts \(p. 260\)](#)


5.11 Email Settings

The following options are available:

- [Settings for receiving E-Mail messages. \(p. 99\)](#)
- [Settings for composing E-Mail messages \(p. 100\)](#)

5.11.1 Settings for receiving E-Mail messages.

How to use the settings for receiving E-Mail messages:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **Email** in the side bar.

Depending on the configuration, the following settings are available:

Buttons

- **Vacation notice**
See [Sending a vacation notice automatically \(p. 75\)](#)
- **Auto-forward**
See [Automatically forwarding email messages \(p. 74\)](#)
- **Change IMAP subscriptions**
See [Subscribing to shared or personal E-Mail folders \(p. 252\)](#)

View

- **Allow HTML formatted Email messages?**
Specifies whether or not displaying HTML messages is allowed.
- **Colour quoted lines**
Specifies whether original messages are highlighted and introduced with a vertical line. This option assumes that the original mail text is not attached but appended to the E-Mail.
- **Use fixed-width font for text email messages**
Specifies whether a fixed-width font is used when displaying a plain text E-Mail.
- **Show requests for read receipts**
Defines whether a return receipt is displayed if a received E-Mail includes a receipt confirmation request.
- **Show folder with all unseen messages**
Defines whether the **Unread messages** folder is displayed in the folder view.

Notification sounds

- **Play sound on incoming mail**
Defines whether a sound is played for incoming messages if the groupware is in the background.
Note: Desktop notifications have to be allowed in the browser settings. See [Receiving Notifications \(p. 40\)](#)
- **Sound**
You can select between different sounds.

Behaviour


- **Permanently remove deleted e-mail messages**
Defines whether deleted E-Mail messages will be removed permanently or whether they will go to the trash folder.
Warning: Permanently removed E-Mail messages can not be restored.
See [Deleting E-Mail messages \(p. 86\)](#)
- **Automatically collect contacts in the "Collected addresses" folder while sending E-Mail messages**
Defines whether new E-Mail addresses are automatically collected in the **Collected contacts** folder when sending a new E-Mail.
- **Automatically collect contacts in the "Collected addresses" folder while reading E-Mail messages**
Defines whether new E-Mail addresses are automatically collected in the **Collected addresses** folder when reading a new E-Mail.
- **Ask for mailto link registration**
Defines whether the groupware can ask for a mailto link registration.

Related topics:

- [Settings for composing E-Mail messages \(p. 100\)](#)
- [Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)
- [Collecting addresses \(p. 81\)](#)

5.11.2 Settings for composing E-Mail messages

How to use the settings for composing E-Mail messages:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **E-Mail** in the side bar. Click on **Compose**.

Depending on the configuration, the following settings are available:

Format email messages as

Defines the format in which email messages are sent:

- **HTML**
The E-Mail is sent with HTML markup. You can format the E-Mail text.
- **Plain text**
The E-Mail text is sent as plain text without formatting.
- **HTML and plain text**
The E-Mail is sent with HTML markup and additionally as plain text.

Default font style

Defines the preset font style for E-Mail text in HTML format.

Forward E-mail messages as

Specifies how an E-Mail text is sent when forwarding the E-Mail.

- **Inline**
The text is sent within the new E-Mail text.
- **Attachment**
The text is sent as attachment to the new E-Mail.

Advanced settings

- **Append vCard**
Specifies whether your contact data will be attached to a new email in the vCard format.
- **Insert the original Email text into a reply?**
Specifies whether the original email text is appended to an email reply.
- **Confirm recipients when replying to a mailing list**
Defines whether you have to confirm the recipient when replying to a mailing list.
- **Default sender address**
Specifies the pre-set sender address for new email messages.
Note: The sender's name is displayed in front of the sender address. If you enter a name in the **Your name** input field in the account settings, this name overwrites the preset sender name.
- **Always add the following recipient to blind carbon copy (BCC)**
To send each outgoing E-Mail as blind copy (BCC) to an E-Mail address, enter the wanted E-Mail address in this field.

Related topics:


- [Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)
- [Settings for receiving E-Mail messages. \(p. 99\)](#)
- [Editing the primary E-Mail account \(p. 259\)](#)

6 Address Book

Learn how to work with the Address Book application.

- [The Address Book Components \(p. 102\)](#)
- [Displaying contacts \(p. 109\)](#)
- [Viewing or Saving Contact Attachments \(p. 110\)](#)
- [Displaying Contacts in the Halo View \(p. 111\)](#)
- [Adding Contacts \(p. 112\)](#)
- [Adding Distribution Lists \(p. 115\)](#)
- [Editing Contacts or Distribution Lists \(p. 118\)](#)
- [Calling Contacts \(p. 119\)](#)
- [Adding Address Books \(p. 120\)](#)
- [Managing Contacts \(p. 124\)](#)
- [Searching for Contacts \(p. 130\)](#)
- [Subscribing to external address books \(p. 121\)](#)
- [Address Book Settings \(p. 131\)](#)

How to launch the Address Book app:

Click the **All Applications** icon  in the menu bar. Click on **Address Book** in the App Launcher.

6.1 The Address Book Components

Learn about the components of the Address Book **Address Book** app user interface and how to use them:


- [The Address Book tool bar \(p. 103\)](#)
- [The Address Book folder view \(p. 104\)](#)
- [The Address Book navigation bar \(p. 104\)](#)
- [The Address Book display area \(p. 105\)](#)
 - [The Address Book list \(p. 105\)](#)
 - [The Address Book detail view \(p. 106\)](#)
- [The contact editing window \(p. 107\)](#)
- [The distribution list editing window \(p. 108\)](#)

6.1.1 The Address Book tool bar

Contains functions for adding, editing and organising contacts. Notes:

- Some functions are only available if you opened an address book for which you have the appropriate permissions to create or edit objects.
- Some buttons are only displayed if the selected contacts have an E-Mail address.

Content

- **New contact.** Creates a new contact or a new distribution list.
- **Edit.** Edits the contact's data.
- **Send e-mail.** Sends an E-Mail to the contact.
- **Invite.** Invites the contact to an appointment.
- **Delete.** Deletes the contacts selected by you.
- **More actions** icon . Opens a menu with additional functions.

Notes:

- Some buttons might not be displayed if you do not have the appropriate permissions.
- Depending on the address book or the contact's data, some buttons might be sorted differently or might not be available.
- **View.** Opens a menu with check boxes for controlling the view.
 - **Folder view.** Opens or closes the folder view.
 - **Check boxes.** Displays a check box next to each contact in the list. This allows selecting multiple contacts to edit them at once.

General description of the user interface:

[The tool bar \(p. 24\)](#)

Related topics:

[Adding Contacts \(p. 112\)](#)

[Adding Distribution Lists \(p. 115\)](#)

[Managing Contacts \(p. 124\)](#)

6.1.2 The Address Book folder view

Displays the address books.


In order to display the folder view, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **Folder view**.

Content

- **My address books.** Contains your personal address books.
- **Public address books.** Contains address books shared with all users.
- **Shared address books.** Contains address books shared with you by other users.

Depending on the configuration, public address books and shared address books might not be available.

Functions

- If clicking on an address book, its contacts are displayed.
- The **Actions** icon  next to the selected address book offers functions for organising data and for exchanging data.
You can also use the **context menu**.
- The **Add new address book** button opens a menu with functions for creating address books and for subscribing to external or shared address books.
- The **My contact data** button opens a dialogue for changing your contact data in the global address book.
- To adjust the folder view width, hover over the line between the folder view and the display area. Drag the border to the left or to the right.

General description of the user interface:

[The folder view \(p. 25\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying contacts \(p. 109\)](#)

[Adding Address Books \(p. 120\)](#)

[Subscribing to public and shared address books \(p. 123\)](#)

[Changing Personal Contact Data \(p. 39\)](#)

[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

[Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)

6.1.3 The Address Book navigation bar

Contains letters in alphabetical order. If clicking on a letter, the list jumps to the contacts with this initial letter.

Related topics:

[Displaying contacts \(p. 109\)](#)

6.1.4 The Address Book display area

Contains the contacts list and a contact's detail view.

General description of the user interface:

[The display area \(p. 26\)](#)

Related topics:

[The Address Book list \(p. 105\)](#)

[The Address Book detail view \(p. 106\)](#)

6.1.5 The Address Book list

Displays a list of contacts in the opened address book.

Content

- The following details are displayed for each contact: name, company, primary E-Mail address.
- The text above the list contains the name of the selected address book. The number corresponds to the number of contacts in the selected address book.
- Names that start with a figure or a special character are displayed below # at the top of the list. Names that start with a special sign are displayed below Ω at the bottom of the list.

Functions

- To select multiple contacts, enable the **Checkboxes** option in the **View** drop-down in the tool bar. You can also use your system's multi-selection functions. In order to select all contacts in the address book, enable the **Select all** checkbox above the list.
- If clicking on a contact, its data is displayed in the detail view.
- To adjust the list width, hover over the line between the list and the detail view. Drag the border to the left or to the right.

Related topics:

[The Address Book display area \(p. 105\)](#)

[The Address Book detail view \(p. 106\)](#)

[Displaying contacts \(p. 109\)](#)

6.1.6 The Address Book detail view

Shows the data of the contact that you selected in the list. If double-clicking on the contact in the list, the data are displayed in a window.

Content

- Picture, name, job position, profession
- An icon below the name indicates whether the contact is available for calls.
- Icons for communicating with the contact:
 - **Email.** Opens the window for composing an E-Mail.
 - **Call.** Opens a menu with functions for calling.
 - **Invite.** Opens the window for creating an appointment.
- E-Mail addresses. If clicking on an E-Mail address, the page for sending a new E-Mail is displayed.
- Business and private phone numbers
- Business and private addresses. In the address book settings, you can define whether a map service for displaying the address should be used when clicking on an address.

The extent of information displayed can vary.

Related topics:

[The Address Book display area \(p. 105\)](#)

[The Address Book list \(p. 105\)](#)

[Displaying contacts \(p. 109\)](#)

[Viewing or Saving Contact Attachments \(p. 110\)](#)

[Calling Contacts \(p. 119\)](#)

[Managing Contacts \(p. 124\)](#)

[Address Book Settings \(p. 131\)](#)

6.1.7 The contact editing window


This window is used when creating a new contact or editing an existing one.

In order to open the window, do one of the following:

- Select **New contact** from the tool bar. Click on **New contact**.
- Select a contact. Click on **Edit** in the tool bar.

Content

- Contact picture
Click on the contact picture to edit it or to upload a new contact picture.
- Contact data input fields:
 - **First name, Last name**
 - **Company, Department**
 - **E-mail 1, Cell phone**
- Elements for adding additional input fields:
 - ⊕ **Add personal info**
 - ⊕ **Add business info**
 - ⊕ **Add e-mail, phone, fax**

If clicking the **Remove field** icon , an additional field and its data will be deleted.
- **Note** input field
- **Add postal address**. Adds input fields for different postal addresses.
- **Add attachment**. Adds files.

General description of the user interface:

[The editing window \(p. 29\)](#)

Related topics:

[Creating a new contact \(p. 113\)](#)

[Editing Contacts or Distribution Lists \(p. 118\)](#)


6.1.8 The distribution list editing window

This window is used when creating a new distribution list or editing an existing one.

In order to open the window, do one of the following:

- Select **New contact** from the tool bar. Click on **New distribution list**.
- Select a distribution list. Click on **Edit** in the tool bar.

Content

- **Name** input field
Enter a meaningful name for the new distribution list in this field.
- Input field below **Participants**.
Enter the E-Mail addresses of the distribution list's contacts in this field. While entering the recipients, matching suggestions will be displayed. To accept a suggestion, click on it.
Select contacts icon . Opens a window for selecting contacts from an address book.

General description of the user interface:

[The editing window \(p. 29\)](#)

Related topics:

[Creating new distribution lists \(p. 116\)](#)

[Editing Contacts or Distribution Lists \(p. 118\)](#)

6.2 Displaying contacts

Learn how to select a specific contact from an address book and to display its data.

Your personal address book can be found in the folder view below Contacts. In the address book settings, you can define the address book that is to be opened by default.

How to display a contact:

1. Select an address book in the folder view.
2. In order to display contacts with a certain initial letter, click a letter in the **navigation bar**.
3. Click on a contact in the list. The contact's data is displayed in the detail view.

Options:

- Use the cursor keys to browse the list.
- You can open a contact in a window by double-clicking on the contact in the list.

User interface:

- [The Address Book folder view \(p. 104\)](#)
- [The Address Book navigation bar \(p. 104\)](#)
- [The Address Book detail view \(p. 106\)](#)
- [The Address Book list \(p. 105\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Viewing or Saving Contact Attachments \(p. 110\)](#)
- [Displaying Contacts in the Halo View \(p. 111\)](#)
- [Searching for Contacts \(p. 130\)](#)
- [Address Book Settings \(p. 131\)](#)
- [Navigating within the folder structure \(p. 241\)](#)

6.3 Viewing or Saving Contact Attachments

The file names of attachments are displayed in the display area. The following functions are available:

- display the attachment in the Viewer
- download the attachment
- save the attachment to Drive

Note: Depending on the attachment's file format, the available function might differ.

How to use the contact attachment functions:

1. Select a contact with an attachment.
2. Click on an attachment's name in the detail view. Click on the function wanted.
If there are several attachments, an action can be executed for all attachments at once. To do so, click on **All attachments**.

Note: Depending on the configuration, attachments will be checked for viruses before being downloaded.

- If no virus is found, the attachments will be downloaded without any further notification.
- If a virus scan was not possible or a virus was found, a window with a respective warning opens. In this case you can cancel the download.

User interface:

[The Address Book detail view \(p. 106\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying contacts \(p. 109\)](#)

6.4 Displaying Contacts in the Halo View

In the E-Mail, Calendar or Tasks app, you can display all relevant information about a contact in the halo view.

How to display a contact in the halo view:

1. Depending on the app, use one of the following methods:
 - Select an E-Mail in the E-Mail app. Click on a recipient or the sender in the detail view.
 - Select an appointment or a task in the Calendar or Tasks app. Click on a participant in the detail view or in the pop-up.

Depending on the contact's entries in the address book, this data will be displayed in a pop-up:

- picture, name, business data
 - An icon below the name indicates the contact's presence status.
 - Icons for communicating with the contact:
 - **Email.** Opens the window for composing an E-Mail.
 - **Call.** Opens a menu with functions for calling.
 - **Invite.** Opens the window for creating an appointment.
 - Date of birth, marital status, business data
 - E-Mail addresses, phone numbers, addresses
 - The address book in which the contact is saved
 - Your recent conversations with this contact If clicking on an E-Mail, its content will be displayed in a pop-up.
 - Shared appointments with this contact. If clicking on an appointment, its data is shown in a pop-up.
2. To close the halo view, click the **Close** icon **✕** in the pop-up.

General description of the user interface:

[The pop-up \(p. 27\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying contacts \(p. 109\)](#)

[The E-Mail pop-up \(p. 62\)](#)

[The Calendar detail view \(p. 141\)](#)

[The Tasks detail view \(p. 188\)](#)

6.5 Adding Contacts

Learn how to add contacts or distribution lists:

- [Creating a new contact \(p. 113\)](#)
- [Adding attachments \(p. 114\)](#)
- [Adding a contact from a vCard attachment \(p. 114\)](#)
- [Adding Distribution Lists \(p. 115\)](#)

User interface:

[The Address Book tool bar \(p. 103\)](#)

Related topics:

[Importing contacts \(p. 127\)](#)


[Adding Distribution Lists \(p. 115\)](#)

6.5.1 Creating a new contact

How to create a new contact:

1. Open an address book in the folder view.
Note: Open an address book for which you have the appropriate permissions to create objects.
2. Select **New contact** from the tool bar. Click on **New contact**.
3. Enter the data.
4. Click on **Save**.

Options:

- To add a contact picture, click on the empty contact picture. The *Edit image* window opens.
 - To upload an existing picture, click on **Upload a photo**.
 - To make a new picture with the device camera, click the **Take photo** icon. You can adjust the image section with the zoom and by moving or rotating the photo. Click on **Apply**. The photo will be inserted. In order to edit the photo, click on it.
- To add additional input fields, click on those elements:
 - ⊕ **Add personal info**
 - ⊕ **Add business info**
 - ⊕ **Add e-mail, phone, fax**
 - ⊕ **Add postal address**
- To remove an additional input field and its data, click on **Remove field**  next to the input field.

User interface:

[The contact editing window \(p. 107\)](#)

Subordinated actions:

[Adding attachments \(p. 114\)](#)

Related topics:

[Creating new distribution lists \(p. 116\)](#)

[Adding a contact from a vCard attachment \(p. 114\)](#)

[Collecting addresses \(p. 81\)](#)

[Editing Contacts or Distribution Lists \(p. 118\)](#)

6.5.2 Adding attachments

How to add attachments in the contact editing window:

1. Click on **Add attachment** at the bottom.
2. Select at least one file.

In order to remove an attachment, click on **Remove attachment**  next to the attachment.

Tip: You can also add an attachment by dragging and dropping a document from a file browser or from the desktop to the contacts window.

Superordinated action:

- [Creating a new contact \(p. 113\)](#)
- [Editing Contacts or Distribution Lists \(p. 118\)](#)

6.5.3 Adding a contact from a vCard attachment

You can add a contact from a vCard attachment to an email. A vCard attachment by default has the name extension vcf.

How to add a contact from an E-Mail's vCard attachment:

1. Select an E-Mail with a vCard attachment in the E-Mail application.
2. Click on **Add to address book** in the detail view.

Related topics:

- [Creating a new contact \(p. 113\)](#)
- [Adding Distribution Lists \(p. 115\)](#)

6.6 Adding Distribution Lists

A distribution list allows you to simultaneously send an E-Mail to multiple recipients by entering the distribution list in the E-Mail's recipients field. The following options are available:

- [Creating new distribution lists \(p. 116\)](#)
- [Saving E-Mail recipients as distribution list \(p. 117\)](#)
- [Creating a distribution list from the list of participants \(p. 117\)](#)

User interface:

[The Address Book tool bar \(p. 103\)](#)


Related topics:


[Adding Contacts \(p. 112\)](#)

6.6.1 Creating new distribution lists

In order to create a new distribution list, enter a name and add contacts.

How to create a new distribution list:

1. Open an address book in the folder view.
Note: Open an address book for which you have the appropriate permissions to create objects.
2. Select **New contact** from the tool bar. Click on **New distribution list**.
3. Enter a name for the distribution list in the **Name** field.
4. Enter a participant's E-Mail address in the **Participants** field.
 - While entering the recipients, matching suggestions will be displayed. To accept a suggestion, click on it.
 - To select contacts from an address book, click the **Select contact** icon  on the right side of the input field.

In order to add further contacts, repeat this step. In order to remove a contact, click  next to the contact.
5. Click on **Create list**.

User interface:

[The distribution list editing window \(p. 108\)](#)

Subordinated actions:

[Selecting contacts from an address book \(p. 68\)](#)

Related topics:

[Saving E-Mail recipients as distribution list \(p. 117\)](#)

[Creating a distribution list from the list of participants \(p. 117\)](#)


[Creating a new contact \(p. 113\)](#)

[Editing Contacts or Distribution Lists \(p. 118\)](#)

6.6.2 Saving E-Mail recipients as distribution list

If an E-Mail contains multiple recipients, you can save all the recipients as a new distribution list.

How to save the recipients of an E-Mail as a distribution list:

1. Select an E-Mail in the E-Mail app.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the detail view.
Click on **Save as distribution list**.
3. Complete the details for creating the distribution list.

Related topics:



[Creating new distribution lists \(p. 116\)](#)

[Creating a distribution list from the list of participants \(p. 117\)](#)

6.6.3 Creating a distribution list from the list of participants

You can create a distribution list from an appointment's list of participants.

You can create a distribution list from an appointment's list of participants.

1. Depending on the selected view, the following options are available in the Calendar:
 - In a calendar view, click on an appointment with multiple participants. In the pop-up, click the **More actions** icon . Click on **Save as distribution list**.
 - In the list view, double-click on an appointment with multiple participants. The appointment will be displayed in a window. Click the **More actions** icon . Click on **Save as distribution list**.
2. Complete the details for creating the distribution list.

Related topics:

[Creating new distribution lists \(p. 116\)](#)

[Saving E-Mail recipients as distribution list \(p. 117\)](#)

6.7 Editing Contacts or Distribution Lists

A contact's or distribution list's contact data can be edited at a later point of time.

Prerequisite: You have the appropriate permissions to edit objects in the address book containing the contact or distribution list.

How to edit a contact or distribution list:

1. Select a contact or a distribution list from the list.
2. Click on **Edit** in the tool bar. The data are displayed.
3. Edit the data.
4. Click on **Save**.

User interface:

- [The contact editing window \(p. 107\)](#)
- [The distribution list editing window \(p. 108\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Creating a new contact \(p. 113\)](#)
- [Creating new distribution lists \(p. 116\)](#)

Subordinated actions:

- [Adding attachments \(p. 114\)](#)

6.8 Calling Contacts

You can launch an audio or video conference with a contact by calling the contact.

Prerequisite: You have set up an account with an audio or video conference provider, e.g. Zoom.

How to call a contact:

1. Select a contact from the list.
In the detail view, an icon below the name indicates the contact's presence status.
2. Click the **Call** icon in the detail view. In the menu, click on an audio or video conference provider, e.g. Zoom. The window for calling the contact opens. Click on **Call**.

User interface:

[The Address Book detail view \(p. 106\)](#)

Related topics:

[Calling the Sender or Another Recipient \(p. 76\)](#)

[Calling Appointment Participants \(p. 164\)](#)

[Scheduling audio/video conferences \(p. 153\)](#)

[Setting up and Configuring the Zoom Integration \(p. 44\)](#)

[Setting the presence status \(p. 46\)](#)

6.9 Adding Address Books

With address books you can organise your contacts e.g. by separately saving them as business or private contacts. Learn how to create address books, use contacts from external address books and set the view for shared address books:

- [Adding address books \(p. 121\)](#)
- [Subscribing to external address books \(p. 121\)](#)
- [Refreshing and managing subscribed address books \(p. 122\)](#)
- [Subscribing to public and shared address books \(p. 123\)](#)

User interface:

[The Address Book folder view \(p. 104\)](#)

Related topics:

[Managing Contacts \(p. 124\)](#)

[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

6.9.1 Adding address books

You can create additional personal address books below My address books.

How to create a new personal address book:

1. In the folder view, click on **Add new address book**. A menu opens.
Click on **Personal address book**. A window opens.
2. Enter a name. In case the new address book should be a public address book, enable **Add as public folder**. Click on **Add**.

Related topics:

[Subscribing to external address books \(p. 121\)](#)

[Moving or copying contacts \(p. 125\)](#)

6.9.2 Subscribing to external address books


You can use your contacts from other providers within the groupware by subscribing to your external address books.

Notes:

- You can sync changes from the external address book by refreshing the subscribed address book.
- You cannot create or edit contacts in the subscribed address book.

How to subscribe to external address books:

1. In the folder view, click on **Add new address book**. A menu opens.
Click on **Subscribe address book**. The *Subscribe to address book* window opens.
2. Click one of the icons. Depending on the data source, the procedure varies.
 - For some data sources, a new browser window opens. Log in with your credentials to grant access to the address data.
 - If the provider asks you for the permission to access the data, grant this permission.
 - For some data sources, you have to enter your credentials for the data source in the *Subscribe to address book* window.

Tip: A subscribed address book is marked with the **Subscriptions** icon . If clicking the icon, the subscriptions settings are opened.

Related topics:

[Adding address books \(p. 121\)](#)




[Refreshing and managing subscribed address books \(p. 122\)](#)

6.9.3 Refreshing and managing subscribed address books

The following options are available:

- refresh a subscribed address book
- show all subscriptions
- disable or enable a subscription
- remove a subscription

How to manage subscribed address books:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Subscriptions**.
3. Use the following methods:
 - To refresh a subscribed address book, click on **Refresh** next to a subscription in the display area.
 - To show the folder with the subscribed data, click on the navigation path below the subscription's name.
To only display this information for a specific folder, click the **Subscriptions** icon  next to a folder with subscriptions, in the folder view.
 - To disable or enable a subscription, click on **Disable** or **Enable** in the display area next to a subscription.
 - To remove a subscription, click the **Delete** icon  next to a subscription in the display area.

Related topics:

[Subscribing to external address books \(p. 121\)](#)

6.9.4 Subscribing to public and shared address books

Address books that are public or shared by other users can be used as follows:

- You can define which public and shared address books are displayed in the folder view by subscribing to such address books.
This helps you to keep a better overview if there are many public and shared address books in your groupware environment.
- If you subscribed to such an address book, you can set whether this address book will be synchronised with other clients, e.g. with your smartphone.
- If you no longer need such an address book, you can cancel the subscription.

How to define the address books to which you want to subscribe and which are to be synchronised:

1. In the folder view, click on **Add new address book**. A menu opens.
Click on **Subscribe shared address book**.
You can also use the **Subscribe shared address books** button in the address book settings.
A window opens. It shows your private, the public and shared address books.
2. If you want an address book to be displayed, enable the **subscribe address book** button .
To define that a displayed address book is synchronised, enable the **Synchronise via DAV** checkbox.
If you no longer want an address book to be displayed and synchronised, disable the **subscribe address book** button .

User interface:

[The Address Book folder view \(p. 104\)](#)

Related topics:

[Accessing other users' shares \(p. 253\)](#)

[Downloading Personal Data \(p. 261\)](#)

[Address Book Settings \(p. 131\)](#)

6.10 Managing Contacts

Learn how to organise your contacts and about the contact actions available:

- [Sending Email Messages from within an address book \(p. 125\)](#)
- [Inviting contacts to an appointment \(p. 125\)](#)
- [Moving or copying contacts \(p. 125\)](#)
- [Sending contacts as vCard \(p. 125\)](#)
- [Adding contacts as XING contacts \(p. 126\)](#)
- [Inviting contacts to XING \(p. 126\)](#)
- [Importing contacts \(p. 127\)](#)
- [Exporting contacts \(p. 128\)](#)
- [Printing contacts \(p. 128\)](#)
- [Deleting contacts \(p. 129\)](#)

User interface:

- [The Address Book tool bar \(p. 103\)](#)
- [The Address Book detail view \(p. 106\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Adding Address Books \(p. 120\)](#)

6.10.1 Sending Email Messages from within an address book

You can send an E-Mail from within your address book to contacts or to a distribution list.

How to send an Email from within an address book:

1. Select a single contact, multiple contacts or distribution lists from the list.
2. Click on **Send e-mail** in the tool bar.
3. Fill in the details for sending the E-Mail.

Related topics:

[Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)

6.10.2 Inviting contacts to an appointment

You can use the address book to invite contacts or a distribution list's contacts to an appointment.

How to invite contacts to an appointment:

1. Select a single contact or distribution list, or multiple contacts or distribution lists from the list.
2. Click on **Invite** in the tool bar.
3. Complete the details for creating the appointment.

Related topics:

[Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)

6.10.3 Moving or copying contacts


You can move or copy contacts or distribution lists to another address book.

Prerequisite: You need to have the appropriate permissions to create objects in the target address book folder.

Notes:

- You cannot move or copy contacts or distribution lists to the global address book.
- You cannot move contacts from the global address book.

How to move or copy contacts to another address book:

1. Select a single contact or distribution list, or multiple contacts or distribution lists from the list.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Move** or **Copy**.
A window opens.
3. Select an address book. You can create a new address book by clicking on **Create folder**.
Click on **Move** or **Copy**.

Tip: You can also move the selected objects by dragging the objects from the folder view to an address book.


Related topics:

[Adding address books \(p. 121\)](#)

6.10.4 Sending contacts as vCard

You can send contacts or distribution lists as vCard attachment to an E-Mail.

How to send a contact as a vCard attachment:

1. Select a single contact or distribution list, or multiple contacts or distribution lists from the list.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Send as vCard**.
3. Fill in the details for sending the E-Mail.


Related topics:

- [Exporting contacts \(p. 128\)](#)
- [Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)

6.10.5 Adding contacts as XING contacts

You can add a contact as an XING contact if you are not connected with this contact in XING. The contact and you need to have XING accounts.

How to add a contact as an XING contact:

1. Select a contact from the list.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Add to XING**.


Related topics:

- [Inviting contacts to XING \(p. 126\)](#)

6.10.6 Inviting contacts to XING

You can invite a contact to XING if this contact does not have an XING account yet.

How to invite a contact to XING:

1. Select a contact from the list.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Invite to XING**.

Related topics:

- [Adding contacts as XING contacts \(p. 126\)](#)


6.10.7 Importing contacts

You can import contacts from files that have the following formats:

- vCard. Note the following:
 - Make sure the file to be imported contains correct vCard data.
 - For each contact only one private and one business address are imported. If the imported vCard file contains additional private and business addresses, those addresses are ignored when importing.
- CSV The following CSV files are supported:
 - Standard CSV files with comma separated values
 - CSV files from the following Microsoft Outlook versions:
 - Microsoft Outlook 2003, 2007
 - German, English, and French language versions

The correct format of the CSV file is automatically recognised. The data assignment to specific data fields depends on your configuration. Additional information are provided by your administrator or host.

How to import contacts from a file:

1. Select the address book for importing the contacts to in the folder view.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the address book. Click on **Import**.
3. Select the wanted format in the *Import from file* window. Click on **Upload file**. Select a suitable file.
4. Click on **Import**.

Result: The contacts are added to the address book.

Related topics:

[Exporting contacts \(p. 128\)](#)

[Adding Contacts \(p. 112\)](#)


6.10.8 Exporting contacts

You can export contacts or distribution lists to those formats:


- vCard. You can e.g. use this format to exchange contacts with other E-Mail applications.
- CSV You can use this format to export contacts to spreadsheet formats.

You can export individual contacts or distribution lists or all objects from an address book.

How to export single contacts or distribution lists:

1. Select a single contact or distribution list, or multiple contacts or distribution lists from the list.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Export**. The *Export selected* window opens.
3. Select a format.
To export contacts and distribution lists, enable **With distribution lists**.
4. Click on **Export**. Complete the entries.

How to export all contacts from an address book:

1. Select a personal or public address book in the folder view.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Export**. The *Export folder* window opens.
3. Select a format.
To export contacts and distribution lists, enable **With distribution lists**.
4. Click on **Export**. Complete the entries.

Related topics:

- [Sending contacts as vCard \(p. 125\)](#)
- [Importing contacts \(p. 127\)](#)
- [Downloading Personal Data \(p. 261\)](#)

6.10.9 Printing contacts

You can print the data of a single contact or of multiple contacts. You can select between different print layouts.

How to print a contact's data:

1. Open an address book in the folder view. Select an individual contact or multiple contacts from the list.
2. Click on **More actions** in the tool bar. Click on **Print**. The *Select print layout* window opens.
3. Select a print layout. Click on **Print**.
Complete the steps for starting the printing process.
4. Close the print preview window.

6.10.10 Deleting contacts

Warning: If you delete contacts or distribution lists, those items are irrevocably lost.

You can delete contacts or distribution lists from an address book if you have the permission to delete items from this address book.

- You cannot delete contacts from the global address book.
- If you delete a distribution list, the distribution list's contacts are kept.

How to delete contacts:

1. Select a single contact or distribution list, or multiple contacts or distribution lists from the list.
2. Click on **Delete** in the tool bar.
3. Confirm that you want to delete the items.

Result: The items will be deleted.

6.11 Searching for Contacts

In order to search for specific contacts, you can use the following search criteria:

- search terms for name, E-Mail address, phone number, department, address
Depending on the configuration, you can use department as search term.
- address books that are to be searched
- type: all, contact, distribution list

How to search for contacts:

1. Click on the **Search** input field. Enter a search term in the input field.
The search menu opens.
2. Define the data sources to be searched by clicking on an entry in the search menu.
 - If clicking on the search term or pressing enter, the following data sources are searched: name, address, phone number
 - In order to only search in names, click on **in names** in the search menu.
Accordingly, you can limit the search to E-Mail addresses, phone numbers, departments or addresses.
 - In order to search for a contact matching the search term, click on a name in the search menu.
The search results are displayed in the list that is shown in the display area.
3. To select an address book for the search, click on the address book next to the input field.
If you select **All folders**, all private, public, and shared address books are searched.
4. To limit the search to contacts or distribution lists, click on **Options** ▼ next to the input field. Select a type.
5. To refine the search result, enter additional search terms: To remove a search term, click the **Remove** icon ✕ next to the search term.
6. In order to finish the search, click the **Cancel search** icon ⓧ in the input field.

User interface:


[The search bar \(p. 23\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying contacts \(p. 109\)](#)

6.12 Address Book Settings

How to use the address book settings:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **Address Book** in the side bar.

Depending on the configuration, the following settings are available:

Buttons

- **Subscribing to shared address books**
See [Subscribing to public and shared address books \(p. 123\)](#)
- **My contact data**
In order to change your personal contact data in the global address book, click on this button. See [Changing Personal Contact Data \(p. 39\)](#)

Display of names

Specifies the order in which a contact's first name and surname are displayed in the address book.

Initial folder

Defines the address book that is opened as default after having logged in.

Link postal addresses with map service

Defines the map service to be used for displaying the address when clicking on a contact's postal address in the address book.

Related topics:


- [Displaying contacts \(p. 109\)](#)
- [The Address Book detail view \(p. 106\)](#)

7 Calendar

Learn how to work with the Calendar application.

- [The Calendar Components \(p. 134\)](#)
- [Viewing Appointments \(p. 144\)](#)
- [Viewing or Saving Appointment Attachments \(p. 149\)](#)
- [Creating Appointments \(p. 150\)](#)
- [Answering Appointment Invitations \(p. 162\)](#)
- [Editing appointments \(p. 163\)](#)
- [Calling Appointment Participants \(p. 164\)](#)
- [Adding Calendars \(p. 165\)](#)
- [Managing Appointments \(p. 169\)](#)
- [Searching for Appointments \(p. 177\)](#)
- [Managing Groups \(p. 178\)](#)
- [Managing Resources \(p. 179\)](#)
- [Calendar Settings \(p. 180\)](#)

How to start the Calendar app

Click the **All Applications** icon  in the menu bar. Click on **Calendar** in the App Launcher.

Depending on the configuration, you can also click the quick start icon in the menu bar for launching the Calendar app.

7.1 The Calendar Components

Learn about the components of the Calendar app user interface and how to use them:

- [The Calendar tool bar \(p. 135\)](#)
- [The mini calendar \(p. 136\)](#)
- [The Calendar folder view \(p. 137\)](#)
- [The Calendar display area \(p. 137\)](#)
 - [Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year calendar view. \(p. 138\)](#)
 - [The date picker \(p. 139\)](#)
 - [The Calendar pop-up \(p. 140\)](#)
 - [The Calendar list \(p. 140\)](#)
 - [The Calendar detail view \(p. 141\)](#)
- [The scheduling view \(p. 142\)](#)
- [The appointment editing window \(p. 143\)](#)


7.1.1 The Calendar tool bar

Contains functions for adding, editing and organising appointments. Note: Some functions are only available if you opened a calendar for which you have the appropriate permissions to create or edit objects.

Content

- **New appointment.** Creates a new appointment.
- **Scheduling.** Opens the scheduling view for scheduling appointments with multiple participants.
- If a calendar view is selected in **View: Today** button. Selects the time frame with the current day.
- **View.** Opens a menu with checkboxes for controlling the view.
 - **Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year.** Selects a calendar view.
 - **List.** Selects the list view.
 - **Folder view.** Opens or closes the folder view.
 - **Mini calendar.** Opens or closes the mini calendar.
 - If the list view is selected and **checkboxes** are enabled, checkboxes for marking objects are displayed in the list.
 - **Print.** Opens the print preview for printing a calendar sheet.

If you select an appointment in the list view, additional elements are displayed:

- **Edit.** Edits an appointment's data.
- **Change status.** Changes the status of the appointment confirmation.
- **Delete.** Deletes the appointments selected by you.
- **More actions** icon . Opens a menu with additional functions.

General description of the user interface:

[The tool bar \(p. 24\)](#)

Related topics:

[Creating Appointments \(p. 150\)](#)

[Managing Appointments \(p. 169\)](#)

[The mini calendar \(p. 136\)](#)

7.1.2 The mini calendar

Displays a clear overview of a month, year or several years above the folder view.

In order to display the mini calendar, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **Folder view** and **Mini calendar**.

Content

- **Browse** icons < >. If clicking the icons, the displayed time range is browsed: one month, one year, 12 years.
- If a month is displayed:
 - The header contains the name of the month and the year.
 - Calendar weeks and the days of the month are displayed. The current day is highlighted.
 - If clicking on a day, the respective time range is used in the calendar view.
 - If clicking on the name of the month in the header, the year is displayed.
- If a year is displayed:
 - The header contains the year.
 - The names of the months are displayed.
 - If clicking on a month name, the month is displayed.
 - If clicking on the year in the header, a time range of 12 months is displayed.
- If a time range of 12 months is displayed:
 - The header contains the start and end of the time range.
 - The years within the time range are displayed.
 - If clicking on a year, the name of the months of the year are displayed.

The date picker offers similar functions.

Related topics:

[The date picker \(p. 139\)](#)

[The Calendar tool bar \(p. 135\)](#)

7.1.3 The Calendar folder view

Displays the calendars.


In order to display the folder view, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **Folder view**.

Content

- **My calendars.** Contains your personal calendars.
- **Public calendars.** Contains calendars shared with all users.
The **All my public appointments** calendar contains the public appointments you participate in.
- **Shared calendars.** Contains calendars shared with you by other users.
If the shared calendar comes from another groupware installation, the user name will be appended with the name of the other domain.

Depending on the configuration, the content can differ from this information.

Functions

- If clicking on a calendar, appointments within that calendar are displayed.
- If enabling the checkbox next to a calendar, this calendar's appointments are displayed in addition to the current calendar's appointments.
- If double-clicking on a calendar, only the appointments in this calendar are displayed.
If double-clicking on this calendar again, the previously displayed calendars are shown again.
- The **Actions** icon  next to the selected calendar offers functions for organising data, for exchanging data and for selecting a calendar colour.
You can also use the **context menu**.
Depending on the calendar, a function for displaying the calendar properties is available.
- The **add new calendar button** opens a menu with functions for creating, subscribing to or importing calendars.
- To adjust the folder view width, hover over the line between the folder view and the display area.
Drag the border to the left or to the right.

General description of the user interface:

[The folder view \(p. 25\)](#)

Related topics:

[Viewing Appointments \(p. 144\)](#)

[Adding Calendars \(p. 165\)](#)

[Using calendar colours \(p. 172\)](#)

[Subscribing to public and shared calendars \(p. 168\)](#)

[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

[Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)

7.1.4 The Calendar display area

Either includes a calendar view or a list view of the appointments. In order to select a view, click on **View** in the tool bar.

General description of the user interface:

[The display area \(p. 26\)](#)

Related topics:

[Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year calendar view. \(p. 138\)](#)

[The Calendar list \(p. 140\)](#)

[The Calendar detail view \(p. 141\)](#)

7.1.5 Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year calendar view.

Displays the appointments of the calendars selected in the folder view, for the chosen time range. If clicking on an appointment, its data is shown in the pop-up.

In order to display the calendar view, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable one of the following settings: **Day, Work week, Week, Month** or **Year**.

Contents of the **Day** view

- **Previous day**<, **Next day** icon>
- Day of the week, date, calendar week. Clicking on it opens the date picker.
- **Split** button. Displays the calendars selected in the folder view, in separate columns.
- The red line in the calendar sheet displays the current time.
- On the left side of the calendar sheet, the time zone is displayed above the dates. To add an additional column with dates in another time zone, click on the time zone.
- If there are additional appointments above or below the visible calendar sheet, arrows are displayed at the top or the bottom of the calendar sheet.

Contents of the **Work week** and **Week** view.

- **Previous week**<, **Next week** icon>
- Month, year, calendar week. Clicking on it opens the date picker.
- Days of the week. The current weekday is highlighted in red. In the calendar settings, you can define the number of days for a work week and the first day of a work week.
- If clicking on a weekday, the window for creating a new whole day appointment opens.
- The red line in the calendar sheet displays the current time.
- On the left side of the calendar sheet, the time zone is displayed above the dates. To add an additional column with dates in another time zone, click on the time zone.
- If there are additional appointments above or below the visible calendar sheet, arrows are displayed at the top or the bottom of the calendar sheet for the respective day.

Contents of the **Month** view

- **Previous day**<, **Next day** icon>
- days of the week, name of the month, year
- The calendar weeks are displayed on the left side of the calendar sheets.

Contents of the **Year** view

- **Previous year**<, **Next year** icon>
- Year. If clicking on it, a window for selecting a year opens. The calendar sheet shows an overview of a year's days and months.
- If clicking on a month, the calendar is opened in the month view

Related topics:

- [The Calendar display area \(p. 137\)](#)
- [The date picker \(p. 139\)](#)
- [The Calendar pop-up \(p. 140\)](#)
- [Displaying appointments in the calendar view \(p. 145\)](#)
- [Creating Appointments \(p. 150\)](#)
- [Managing Appointments \(p. 169\)](#)
- [Calendar Settings \(p. 180\)](#)

7.1.6 The date picker

Shows a window with a calendar for selecting a date. The window will be closed as soon as you select a date or click outside the window.

In order to display the date picker, do one of the following:

- Click on the date on the upper left side of the **Day**, **Workweek** or **Week** calendar view.
Note: The date picker is only displayed in a calendar view if the mini calendar is hidden. In order to hide the mini calendar, click on **View** in the tool bar. Disable **Mini calendar**.
- Click on the date on the upper left side of the scheduling view.
- Click on a date input field in the appointment editing window.

Content

- **Browse** icons < >. If clicking the icons, the displayed time range is browsed: one month, one year, 12 years.
- If a month is displayed:
 - The header contains the name of the month and the year.
 - Calendar weeks and the days of the month are displayed.
 - If clicking on a day, the date picker closes. The selected date will be used.
If clicking on **Today**, the date picker closes. The current date will be used.
 - If clicking on the name of the month in the header, the year is displayed.
- If a year is displayed:
 - The header contains the year.
 - The names of the months are displayed.
 - If clicking on a month name, the month is displayed.
 - If clicking on **Today**, the date picker closes. The current date will be used.
 - If clicking on the year in the header, a time range of 12 months is displayed.
- If a time range of 12 months is displayed:
 - The header contains the start and end of the time range.
 - The years within the time range are displayed.
 - If clicking on a year, the name of the months of the year are displayed.
 - If clicking on **Today**, the current month is displayed. The current day is highlighted.

The mini calendar offers similar functions.


Related topics:

- [The mini calendar \(p. 136\)](#)
- [Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year calendar view. \(p. 138\)](#)
- [The appointment editing window \(p. 143\)](#)
- [The scheduling view \(p. 142\)](#)
- [The editing window \(p. 189\)](#)
- [Using the date picker \(p. 152\)](#)
- [Displaying appointments in the calendar view \(p. 145\)](#)

7.1.7 The Calendar pop-up

Shows the data of an appointment that you select in the calendar view.

Content

- **Accept, Decline, Change status, Edit, Follow-up, Delete** buttons.
Note: Depending on the configuration, the following limitations might prevail:
 - Some buttons for appointments in your private calendars are only displayed if you have the respective permissions for executing the function.
 - If you are a participant, you cannot change or delete the appointment.
 - If you are the organiser, you cannot change your status.
- If clicking the **More actions** icon  a menu with additional functions opens.

Below the buttons, the same information is shown as in the calendar detail view.

General description of the user interface:

[The pop-up \(p. 27\)](#)

Related topics:

[Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year calendar view. \(p. 138\)](#)

[The Calendar detail view \(p. 141\)](#)

[Displaying appointments in the calendar view \(p. 145\)](#)

[Managing Appointments \(p. 169\)](#)

[Creating a follow-up appointment \(p. 158\)](#)

7.1.8 The Calendar list


Displays a list of the appointments of the calendars selected in the folder view.

In order to display the list view, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **List**.

Content

- Each day with appointments shows a header with the date.
- The following details are displayed for each appointment: date, time, colour, private appointment icon, subject and location.

Functions

- If clicking on an appointment, its data is displayed in the detail view.
- To select multiple appointments, enable the **Checkboxes** option in the **View** drop-down in the tool bar.
You can also use your system's multi-selection functions.
In order to select all appointments in the calendar, enable the **Select all** checkbox above the list.
- If clicking the **Sort** icon  above the list, a menu opens that allows sorting appointments.
- To adjust the list width, hover over the line between the list and the detail view. Drag the border to the left or to the right.

Related topics:

[The Calendar display area \(p. 137\)](#)

[The Calendar detail view \(p. 141\)](#)

[Viewing Appointments \(p. 144\)](#)

[Displaying appointments in the list view \(p. 148\)](#)

7.1.9 The Calendar detail view

Shows the data of the appointment that you select in the list. If double-clicking on the appointment in the list, the data are displayed in a window.

In order to display the detail view, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **List**.

Content

- Subject
- Date, time, time zone
- For recurring appointments: the recurrence type
- appointment location, if entered
- If the appointment is a conference: A button to join the conference
- Appointment description, if entered
- The names of the participants. The organiser is mentioned first.
If clicking on a name, a pop-up opens. It displays the participant's **Halo View**.
- If the appointment has several participants, the number of participants that accepted, declined or have not replied yet are shown on the top right side above the list of participants. In order to filter the list of participants, click the icons.
- Names of existing resources. If clicking on a resource, a pop-up opens.
- If the appointment includes external participants, their names are displayed below **External participants**.
- If clicking on **Details**, additional information is displayed:
 - the appointment's organiser
 - availability
 - which calendar
 - who created the appointment and when
 - who was the last person to modify the appointment

Related topics:

[The Calendar display area \(p. 137\)](#)

[The Calendar list \(p. 140\)](#)

[The Calendar pop-up \(p. 140\)](#)

[Viewing Appointments \(p. 144\)](#)

[Calling Appointment Participants \(p. 164\)](#)

[Managing Appointments \(p. 169\)](#)

[Displaying Contacts in the Halo View \(p. 111\)](#)

7.1.10 The scheduling view

Shows the appointments of the participants that you add to a scheduled appointment.

In order to display the scheduling view, do one of the following:

- Click on **Scheduling** in the tool bar.
- Click on **Find a free time** in the appointment editing window.

Content

- The **Browse** icons < > enable you to browse back and forth.
- Start and end date of the selected time range and the calendar week. If clicking on it, the date picker opens that allows setting a different time range.
- Icons for adjusting the zoom ratio for the calendar sheet view
- **Options** button. If clicking on it, a menu with several functions opens:
 - **Compact**. Defines the line height for displaying the participants and resources
 - **Show fine grid**. Defines a smaller grid spacing for the time grid.
 - **Free**. Defines whether free appointments are displayed. Such appointments do not cause conflicts.
 - **Week** or **Month** date range. Defines the date range that is displayed in the scheduling view.
 - **Hide non-working time**. Defines whether times that are outside the working hours are hidden.
- If the scheduling view was opened from the tool bar: **Close** icon ✕
- An input field for participants and resources
- A list of participants. The following information are shown for each participant: Name, **Remove** icon 🗑, appointments in the calendar sheet.
- The calendar sheet of the selected time range.
- Scroll bar. The scroll bar allows setting the part of the time range to be displayed.
- **Save as distribution list** button. Saves the added participants in a new distribution list.

Related topics:

[Using the scheduling view \(p. 158\)](#)

[The date picker \(p. 139\)](#)

[The appointment editing window \(p. 143\)](#)

7.1.11 The appointment editing window

This window is used when creating an appointment or editing an appointment.

In order to open the window, do one of the following:

- Select **New appointment** from the tool bar.
- Select an appointment in the list view. Click on **Edit** in the tool bar.
- Click on an appointment in a calendar view. Click on **Edit** in the pop-up.

Content

- Appointment data
 - **Subject.** The subject is displayed as the appointment title.
 - **Starts on** and **Ends on.** Set the start and end date of the appointment. Clicking on it opens the date picker.
If **All day** is disabled, you can set start and end times.
 - If clicking on a time zone button next to a time, a window opens that allows to select a time zone for the appointment's start and end time.
You can set frequently used time zones as favourites in the calendar settings.
 - **All day.** Defines whether the appointment is supposed to last whole days.
 - **Find a free time.** Opens the scheduling view. In this view, you can find a free time when scheduling an appointment with several participants.
 - **Repeat.** Defines whether the appointment is supposed to be repeated.
 - **Conference.** Defines whether the appointment is supposed to take place as audio or video conference.
If you select a provider for the meeting, the following will be displayed:
 - A link that allows the participants to take part in the conference by audio or video.
 - A dial-in number that allows the participants to participate by phone.
 - Buttons to copy the link or dial-in numbers to various places.
 - **Location, Description** input fields. Location and description can be optionally entered.
 - The appointment's participants.
 - **Add contact/resource** input field. Enter the names of the participants or resources.
- Appointment view
 - **Calendar.** Shows the calendar in which the appointment will be created. If clicking on it, a menu for selecting a calendar opens.
 - **Reminder.** Defines when and how you will be reminded about the appointment's due date.
 - **Appointment colour.** You can define the colour in which the appointment is displayed.
 - **Visibility.** Defines the visibility of the appointment in a shared calendar:
 - **Standard.** The appointment is visible to all users.
 - **Private.** Users that are no participants can only view the appointment date.
 - **Secret.** Users that are not participants cannot view the appointment.
 - **Show as free.** Defines whether the appointment is displayed as free. Enable this checkbox to avoid conflicts with overlapping appointments.
 - **Participants can make changes.** Defines whether participants can edit the appointment.
- **Add attachments.** Adds files.

General description of the user interface:

[The editing window \(p. 29\)](#)

Related topics:

[The date picker \(p. 139\)](#)

[The scheduling view \(p. 142\)](#)

[Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)

[Editing appointments \(p. 163\)](#)

[Managing favourite time zones \(p. 172\)](#)

7.2 Viewing Appointments

Learn how to display the appointments of one calendar or several calendars in different ways:

- [Displaying appointments in the calendar view \(p. 145\)](#)
- [Displaying multiple time zones \(p. 146\)](#)
- [How are appointments displayed in a calendar view? \(p. 147\)](#)
- [Displaying appointments in the list view \(p. 148\)](#)

User interface:

[The Calendar folder view \(p. 137\)](#)


[The Calendar display area \(p. 137\)](#)

7.2.1 Displaying appointments in the calendar view

How to display appointments in the calendar view:

1. Click on **View** in the tool bar. Select one of the following entries: **Day**, **Work week**, **Week** or **Month**.
2. Select a calendar in the folder view. Make sure the checkbox next to the calendar is enabled.
3. In order to browse the calendar, use the navigation bar on top of the calendar sheet.
In order to display the time frame with the current day, click on **Today** in the tool bar.
4. Click on an appointment in the calendar sheet. The calendar's data is displayed in the pop-up.

Options:

- To view the appointments of other calendars, enable the checkboxes next to the respective calendars.
Note: if a subscribed calendar is marked with an exclamation mark, there is an issue with retrieving this calendar's appointments. To get additional information, click on the exclamation mark.
- If you selected the **Day** view, you can display the selected calendars next to each other by clicking on **Split**.
- To only view the appointments of a single calendar, the following options are available:
 - Double-click on the calendar in the folder view.
To display the previously displayed calendars again, double-click on this calendar again.
 - Click the **Actions** icon  next to the calendar. Click on **Show this calendar only**.
 - Disable the checkboxes next to the other calendars.

User interface:

[Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year calendar view. \(p. 138\)](#)

[The date picker \(p. 139\)](#)

[The Calendar pop-up \(p. 140\)](#)

Related topics:

[How are appointments displayed in a calendar view? \(p. 147\)](#)

[Displaying appointments in the list view \(p. 148\)](#)

[Displaying multiple time zones \(p. 146\)](#)

[Viewing or Saving Appointment Attachments \(p. 149\)](#)

[Navigating within the folder structure \(p. 241\)](#)

7.2.2 Displaying multiple time zones

In addition to the default time zone, you can display time zones that have been marked as favourites by you. The default time zone can be changed in the basic settings.

How to display multiple time zones in a calendar view:

1. Click on **View** in the tool bar. Select one of the following entries: **Day**, **Work week** or **Week**.
2. Click on the **Timezone** button ▼ on the left side above the calendar sheet.
A menu opens. Enable a time zone in the menu below **Favourites**.
By clicking on **Manage favourites** you can add/remove time zones to/from favourites.

User interface:

[Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year calendar view. \(p. 138\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying appointments in the calendar view \(p. 145\)](#)

[Managing favourite time zones \(p. 172\)](#)

[Customising the basic settings \(p. 36\)](#)

7.2.3 How are appointments displayed in a calendar view?

In a calendar view, the appointment display is defined by the following details:

- Your availability displayed during the appointment duration: Reserved, Free
- Your appointment confirmation status: Accepted, Tentative, Declined
- Visibility of the appointment in shared calendars for users who are not participants: Standard, Private, Secret
- If there is enough space, icons for the following appointments are displayed in the Day, Workweek and Week calendar view: serial appointment, appointment with participants, private appointment, secret appointment, tentative appointment

The display is distinguished by the colours, icons and different shadings.

Display of appointments that are visible to all

Depending on the displayed availability, public appointments are displayed in the following colours and patterns:

- Free: Selected colour with broad diagonal stripes
- Booked: Selected colour

If you do not select a colour, the colour of the calendar is used. Depending on the appointment confirmation status, public appointments are displayed as follows:



- Accepted appointments are displayed in the colour and pattern of the availability.
- Tentatively accepted appointments are displayed with question marks.
- Declined appointments are displayed in light gray with a crossed subject.

Tip: In the calendar settings, you can define whether declined appointments are displayed.

Note: In public or shared calendars you will only see the colours of appointments that have been created by you.

Private or secret appointments display

Private and secret appointments are displayed as follows:

- Private appointments are displayed in grey and are marked with the **Private** icon . Users that are no participants can only view the appointment date in shared calendars.
- Secret appointments are displayed in grey and are marked with the **Private** icon . Users that are not participants cannot view the appointment in shared calendars. Secret appointments are not considered for the conflict handling. Secret appointments are not displayed in the scheduling view.

Related topics:

[Displaying appointments in the calendar view \(p. 145\)](#)


[Using calendar colours \(p. 172\)](#)

7.2.4 Displaying appointments in the list view

How to display an appointment in the list view:

1. Click on **View** in the tool bar. Select **List**.
2. Select a calendar in the folder view. Make sure the checkbox next to the calendar is enabled.
3. Click on an appointment in the list. The appointment's data is displayed in the detail view.

Options:

- To view the appointments of other calendars, enable the checkboxes next to the respective calendars. Note: if a subscribed calendar is marked with an exclamation mark, there is an issue with retrieving this calendar's appointments. To get additional information, click on the exclamation mark.
- To only view the appointments of a single calendar, the following options are available:
 - Double-click on the calendar in the folder view. To display the previously displayed calendars again, double-click on this calendar again.
 - Click the **Actions** icon  next to the calendar. Click on **Show this calendar only**.
 - Disable the checkboxes next to the other calendars.
- Use the cursor keys to browse the list.
- You can open an appointment in a window by double-clicking on the appointment in the list.

User interface:

[The Calendar list \(p. 140\)](#)

Related topics:

[Navigating within the folder structure \(p. 241\)](#)

[Searching for Appointments \(p. 177\)](#)

[Displaying appointments in the calendar view \(p. 145\)](#)

[Displaying multiple time zones \(p. 146\)](#)

[Viewing or Saving Appointment Attachments \(p. 149\)](#)

7.3 Viewing or Saving Appointment Attachments

Depending on the view selected, the file names of appointment attachments are either displayed in the pop-up or in the display area below the subject. The following functions are available:

- display the attachment in the Viewer
- download the attachment
- save the attachment to Drive

Note: Depending on the attachment's file format, the available functions might differ.

How to use the appointment attachment functions:

1. Depending on the view, you have the following options:
 - Click on an appointment with an attachment in a calendar view. Click on an attachment's name in the pop-up.
 - Click on an appointment with an attachment in the list view. Click on an attachment's name in the detail view.
2. Click on the function wanted.

If there are several attachments, an action can be executed for all attachments at once. To do so, click on **All attachments**.

Note: Depending on the configuration, attachments will be checked for viruses before being downloaded.

- If no virus is found, the attachments will be downloaded without any further notification.
- If a virus scan was not possible or a virus was found, a window with a respective warning opens. In this case you can cancel the download.

Related topics:

[Displaying appointments in the calendar view \(p. 145\)](#)

[Displaying appointments in the list view \(p. 148\)](#)

[The Calendar list \(p. 140\)](#)

[The Calendar detail view \(p. 141\)](#)

[Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year calendar view. \(p. 138\)](#)

[The Calendar pop-up \(p. 140\)](#)

7.4 Creating Appointments

Learn how to create an appointment and about the functions available for defining the appointment data:

- [Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)
- [Using the date picker \(p. 152\)](#)
- [Scheduling audio/video conferences \(p. 153\)](#)
- [Setting recurring appointments \(p. 154\)](#)
- [Setting an appointment's display \(p. 155\)](#)
- [Using appointment reminders \(p. 155\)](#)
- [Adding participants or resources \(p. 156\)](#)
- [Adding attachments \(p. 157\)](#)
- [Using the scheduling view \(p. 158\)](#)
- [Creating a follow-up appointment \(p. 158\)](#)
- [Inviting participants to a new appointment \(p. 159\)](#)
- [Inviting E-Mail recipients to new appointments \(p. 160\)](#)
- [Creating appointments from iCal attachments \(p. 160\)](#)
- [Resolving appointment conflicts \(p. 161\)](#)

Notes:

- To create an appointment in a calendar, you need to have the permission to create objects in the calendar.
- You cannot create appointments in subscribed calendars.

Tip: Whether it is best to use an appointment or a task can be determined based on the following criteria:

- An appointment takes place at a defined point in time. If you need to execute an action at a defined point in time, create an appointment for this action.
- A task has a due date and sometimes a priority. If you are flexible regarding the time schedule of an action and only have to respect the due date, enter a task for this action.

User interface:

- [The Calendar tool bar \(p. 135\)](#)
- [Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year calendar view. \(p. 138\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Importing appointments \(p. 172\)](#)
- [Creating Tasks \(p. 192\)](#)

7.4.1 Creating new appointments

How to create a new appointment:

1. Open a calendar in the folder view.
Note: Open a calendar for which you have the appropriate permissions to create appointments.
2. Select **New appointment** from the tool bar.
If selecting a shared calendar, you are asked where to create the appointment:
 - If you create the appointment on behalf of the owner, the appointment is created in the owner's shared calendar.
 - If you invite the owner to the appointment though, the appointment is saved in your calendar.If you selected a public calendar, you are asked, as a precaution, whether you want to create the appointment in the public calendar.
3. Enter a subject. If required, enter the location.
4. To set an appointment's start and end time, use the following options below **Start date** and **Ends on**.
 - Click on a date. The date picker opens. Enter a date or select a date in the date picker.
For all day appointments, activate **All day**.
 - Click on a time. Enter the time or select a time from the list.
 - You can set the time zone for the start or end time by clicking on the time zone button next to a time. You can set different time zones for the start and end time.
5. You can enter a description.
If you want to create the appointment in another calendar, click on the calendar name below **Calendar**. Select a calendar.
6. Click on **Create**.

Options:

- To create an appointment, double-click in the calendar sheet on a free area or drag open an area ranging from the beginning to the end of the new appointment.
- In order to create an all day appointment, select the **Work week** or **Week** calendar view. Click on a day above the calendar sheet.

Example: How can I organise another person's appointments as a representative?

- Ask the other person to share a calendar folder with write permissions.
- Enter this person's appointments in this folder. The other person will be displayed as the organiser of the appointments.

User interface:

[The appointment editing window \(p. 143\)](#)

Subordinated actions:

[Using the date picker \(p. 152\)](#)
[Setting recurring appointments \(p. 154\)](#)
[Scheduling audio/video conferences \(p. 153\)](#)
[Setting an appointment's display \(p. 155\)](#)
[Using appointment reminders \(p. 155\)](#)
[Adding participants or resources \(p. 156\)](#)
[Adding attachments \(p. 157\)](#)

Related topics:

[Using the scheduling view \(p. 158\)](#)
[Creating a follow-up appointment \(p. 158\)](#)
[Inviting participants to a new appointment \(p. 159\)](#)
[Inviting E-Mail recipients to new appointments \(p. 160\)](#)
[Creating appointments from iCal attachments \(p. 160\)](#)
[Resolving appointment conflicts \(p. 161\)](#)
[Inviting contacts to an appointment \(p. 125\)](#)

[Editing appointments \(p. 163\)](#)

7.4.2 Using the date picker

The date picker allows selecting the date to be entered in a date field.

How to use the date picker in the editing window:

1. Click on the date field below **Starts on** or **Ends on**. The date picker opens.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - To select a date within the current month, click on the desired day.
To select today's date, you can also click on **Today**.
 - To select a date from another month, the following options are available:
 - Navigate to the required month by using the **Browse** icons **<** **>** in the button bar.
You can also click on the month name in the header. The year will be displayed. Click on the desired month.
 - Click on the desired day.
 - To select a date from another year, the following options are available:
 - Click on the month name in the header. The current year will be displayed.
 - Navigate to the required year by using the **Browse** icons **<** **>** in the button bar.
You can also click on the year in the header. A time range of 12 months will be displayed. Click on the desired year.
 - Click on the desired month. Click on the desired day.

The date picker will be closed. The date is entered into the date field.

User interface:

[The date picker \(p. 139\)](#)

Super-ordinate actions:

[Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)

[Editing appointments \(p. 163\)](#)

[Creating new tasks \(p. 193\)](#)

[Editing tasks \(p. 196\)](#)

7.4.3 Scheduling audio/video conferences

Prerequisite: You have set up an account with an audio or video conference provider, e.g. Zoom.

How to schedule an audio/video conference in the appointment editing window:

1. Click on the **Conference** field. The available providers will be displayed. Select a provider.
A link will be displayed that can be used by the participants to join the conference. To enable participants to take part in the conference by phone, a dial-in number will be displayed.
2. You can copy the link or dial-in number in order to be found more easily by the participants:
 - To copy the link to the **Location** field, click on **Copy to location field**.
 - To copy the link to the clipboard, click on **Copy to clipboard**.
 - To copy the dial-in numbers to the appointment description, click on **Copy dial-in numbers to description**.

A participant can join the conference by clicking on the link or by using a dial-in number by phone.

Superordinated action:

[Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)

[Editing appointments \(p. 163\)](#)

Related topics:

[Calling Appointment Participants \(p. 164\)](#)

[Calling Contacts \(p. 119\)](#)

[Calling the Sender or Another Recipient \(p. 76\)](#)

[Setting up and Configuring the Zoom Integration \(p. 44\)](#)

7.4.4 Setting recurring appointments

How to create a recurring appointment in the appointment editing window:

1. Enable **Repeat**. The current repetition parameters are displayed.
2. To set the repetition parameters, click on the value.
3. Change the recurrence parameters in the *Edit recurrence* window:
 - In **Repeat**, you can set the interval between the appointments.
 - Below the interval, you can set the interval parameters.
 - In **Ends**, you can define when the recurring appointment ends.Click on **Apply**.

Example:

- An appointment or a task should take place each second day, and should take place five times.
 - Repeat **Daily**
 - Interval **2** days
 - Ends **After a number of occurrences**
 - Occurrences **5**
- An appointment or a task should take place each Tuesday and Friday.
 - Repeat **Weekly**
 - Weekday **Tue, Fr**
 - Interval **1** week(s)
 - Ends **Never**
- An appointment or a task should take place every second Wednesday. The last appointment should be on 08-03-2023.
 - Repeat **Weekly**
 - Weekday **Wed**
 - Interval **2** week(s)
 - Ends **On specific date**
 - Ends on **08-03-2023**
- An appointment or a task should take place on the first Monday of a month. The event should take place twelve times.
 - Repeat **Monthly**
 - Repeat by **Date**
 - Interval **1** month(s)
 - Ends **After a number of occurrences**
 - Occurrences **12**
- An appointment or a task should take place each year on the last Friday in November.
 - Repeat **Yearly**
 - Repeat by **Week day**
 - Ends **Never**

Superordinated action:

- [Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)
- [Editing appointments \(p. 163\)](#)

Related topics:



- [Creating recurring tasks \(p. 194\)](#)

7.4.5 Setting an appointment's display

The following options are available:

- display the appointment as free
- select an appointment colour
- define the visibility in shared calendars

How to set the appointment's display in the appointment editing window:

1. If there should be no conflict with overlapping appointments, enable **Show as free**.
2. In order to set an individual colour for the appointment, click on **Appointment colour**. Select a colour field. If clicking on **Use calendar colour**, the appointment gets the colour of its calendar.
3. In a shared calendar, you can use **Visibility** to define the calendar's visibility for other users who are not participants.
 - In the default setting **Standard**, the appointment is visible to all users who have permission to see the calendar.
 - If only the appointment date should be visible for other users but not the subject or other appointment data, select **Private** from the drop-down. Private appointments are marked with the **Private** icon .
 - If the appointment is to be invisible for other users, select **Secret** from the drop-down. Secret appointments are marked with the **Private** icon . Secret appointments do not conflict with other appointments. They are not displayed in the scheduling view.

Superordinated action:


- [Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)
- [Editing appointments \(p. 163\)](#)

7.4.6 Using appointment reminders

When creating or editing an appointment, you can set to be reminded of the appointment's due date. To do so, you can use one or several of the following notifications:

- an appointment reminder in the notification area
- an appointment reminder by E-Mail

How to set an appointment reminder in the appointment editing window:

1. Click on the current setting below **Reminder**. The *Edit reminders* window opens. It shows the current reminder.
2. To change the current reminder, select the reminder type. Select a time for the reminder. Define the benchmark for the time.
3. In order to add another reminder, click on **Add new Reminder**.
In order to delete a reminder, click the **Delete** icon .
4. Click on **Apply**.

Superordinated action:



- [Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)
- [Editing appointments \(p. 163\)](#)


Related topics:

- [Changing appointment reminders \(p. 171\)](#)

7.4.7 Adding participants or resources

How to add participants or resources in the appointment editing window:

1. In the input field below **Participants**, enter: the E-Mail addresses of the participant, the name of a group, distribution list or resource.
 - While entering the recipients, matching suggestions will be displayed. To accept a suggestion, click on it.
 - To select contacts from an address book, click the **Select contact** icon  on the right side of the input field.
2. Depending on the configuration, you can define whether participants can edit the appointment later. To do so, enable the **Participants can make changes** checkbox. Please note the following:
 - This option is not available for appointments in public folders or for appointments with external participants.
 - The checkbox is only available for the appointment's organiser. Each change is done on the behalf of the organiser.
 - Participants can add other participants but not remove participants. Participants cannot remove themselves from the appointment.
3. To remove participants or resources, click the **Remove** icon  next to the name.

By default, you are entered as the organiser when creating the appointment. If you create the appointment in a public calendar, you can remove the organiser from the appointment. To do so, click the **Remove** icon  next to the organiser.

Result:

- Each participant receives an appointment invitation.
- If participants accept the appointment, the appointment will be entered in their calendar.
- If external participants accept the appointment, you will receive an E-Mail. In this E-Mail, you have to accept the appointment change so that the external participant will be entered in your appointment.

Tip: To find free appointments of all participants and resources you can [use the schedule view](#).

Super-ordinate actions:

- [Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)
- [Editing appointments \(p. 163\)](#)

Subordinated actions:


- [Selecting contacts from an address book \(p. 68\)](#)

7.4.8 Adding attachments

How to add attachments in the appointment editing window:

1. Click on **Add attachments** below **Attachments**.

2. Select at least one file.

In order to remove an attachment, click the **Delete attachment** icon .

Tip: You can also add an attachment by dragging and dropping a document from a file browser or from the desktop to the appointments window.


Superordinated action:

[Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)

7.4.9 Using the scheduling view

When scheduling an appointment with several participants or resources, the Scheduling view shows free and busy time periods for the users and resources.

How to use the scheduling view for creating appointments:

1. You have the following possibilities for opening the scheduling view:
 - To use the scheduling view before creating a new appointment, click on **Scheduling** in the tool bar. The *Scheduling* page opens.
 - To use the scheduling view while creating a new appointment or editing an existing appointment, click on **Find a free time** in the appointment editing window. The *Scheduling* window opens.
2. Enter the name of a participant or resource in **Add participant**.
 - While entering the recipients, matching suggestions will be displayed. To accept a suggestion, click on it.
 - To select contacts from an address book, click the **Select contact** icon  on the right side of the input field.

The appointments of the participant or resource are displayed in the calendar sheet.

You can save the participants as a distribution list. To do so, select **Save as distribution list** below the list.

3. Search for a free time in the calendar. Use the following methods:
 - To set a time range, click on the date on the upper left side. You can also use the browse icons
 - To set the display size of the calendar sheet, use the control elements on the upper right side.
 - To set the **Week** or **Month** date range, enable the respective entries in the **Options** drop-down.
 - Use the **Options** menu to adjust the view in the calendar sheet.
 - To adjust the visible part of the time range, use the scroll bar below the calendar sheet.
4. Define the appointment's start and end by using one of the following options:
 - In the calendar sheet drag open an area ranging from the beginning to the end of the new appointment.
If pressing the [Alt] key before releasing the mouse button, the appointment's start and end date are entered on the appointment editing page.
 - To set the appointment's duration to one hour, click on the wanted time.

Depending on how you opened the scheduling view, either click on **Create appointment** or on **Accept changes** to finish the process. The appointment editing window will be displayed.

5. Complete the details for creating or editing the appointment.

User interface:

[The scheduling view \(p. 142\)](#)

Subordinated actions:

[Selecting contacts from an address book \(p. 68\)](#)

Related topics:

[Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)

[Inviting participants to a new appointment \(p. 159\)](#)

[Resolving appointment conflicts \(p. 161\)](#)

7.4.10 Creating a follow-up appointment

You can create a follow-up appointment for an existing appointment. The follow-up appointment is prefilled with essential data from the existing appointment.

How to create a follow-up appointment:

1. Depending on the view, you have the following options:
 - Click on an appointment in a calendar view. In the pop-up, click on **Follow-up**.
 - Double-click on an appointment in the list view. The appointment will be displayed in a window. Click on **Follow-up**.
2. Adjust the data for the new appointment. Click on **Create**.

User interface:

[The Calendar pop-up \(p. 140\)](#)
[The Calendar list \(p. 140\)](#)



Related topics:

[Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)
[Using the scheduling view \(p. 158\)](#)
[Resolving appointment conflicts \(p. 161\)](#)

7.4.11 Inviting participants to a new appointment

If an appointment has several participants, you can invite those participants to a new appointment.

How to invite participants to a new appointment:

1. Depending on the view, you have the following options:
 - In a calendar view, click on an appointment with multiple participants. In the pop-up, click the **More actions** icon .
 - In the list view, double-click on an appointment with multiple participants. The appointment will be displayed in a window. Click the **More actions** icon .Click on **Invite to new appointment**.
2. Complete the details for creating an appointment.


Related topics:

[Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)
[Inviting E-Mail recipients to new appointments \(p. 160\)](#)
[Using the scheduling view \(p. 158\)](#)
[Resolving appointment conflicts \(p. 161\)](#)

7.4.12 Inviting E-Mail recipients to new appointments

If there are several E-Mail recipients, all recipients can be invited to a new appointment.

How to invite all E-Mail recipients to an appointment:

1. Select an E-Mail in the E-Mail app.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the detail view.
Click on **Invite to appointment**.
3. Complete the details for creating an appointment.

Related topics:

- [Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)
- [Inviting participants to a new appointment \(p. 159\)](#)
- [Using the scheduling view \(p. 158\)](#)
- [Resolving appointment conflicts \(p. 161\)](#)

7.4.13 Creating appointments from iCal attachments

You can create an appointment from an E-Mail's iCal attachment. An iCal attachment can be identified by the file extension .ics.

How to create an appointment from an E-Mail's iCal attachment:

1. Select an E-Mail with an iCal attachment in the E-Mail application.
2. Click on an attachment's name in the detail view. Click on **Add to calendar**.

Related topics:

- [Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)
- [Resolving appointment conflicts \(p. 161\)](#)

7.4.14 Resolving appointment conflicts

An appointment conflict happens if the following is true:

- You are the participant of an existing appointment. The appointment display is set as follows:
 - The visibility is set to **Standard** or **Private**.
 - The **Show as free** checkbox is disabled.
- You create a new appointment. You select the following appointment display:
 - The visibility is set to **Standard** or **Private**.
 - The **Show as free** checkbox is disabled.

As soon as you click on **Create**, the *Conflicts detected* page opens. The appointments causing the conflict are displayed.

How to resolve appointment conflicts:

1. To show or hide details, you can click on an appointment on the *Conflicts detected* page.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - To create the appointment despite the conflict, click on **Ignore conflicts**.
 - To resolve the conflict, click on **Cancel**. Change the appointment's times or enable **Show as free**.

Related topics:

[Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)

[Using the scheduling view \(p. 158\)](#)

[Creating a follow-up appointment \(p. 158\)](#)


7.5 Answering Appointment Invitations

If a user or an external partner adds you to the appointment recipients, you will receive at least one of the following notifications:

- You are informed about this appointment in the Notification area.
- You will receive an E-Mail invitation for the appointment.

You can accept, temporarily accept or refuse your participation in the appointment. You can always change your appointment confirmation status later.

How to answer an appointment invitation in the notification area:

1. Click the **Notifications** icon  in the menu bar. The Notification area is displayed.
2. To display the suggested appointment in the calendar, click on **Open in calendar**.
To answer the appointment invitation, click on **Accept/Decline** below the invitation.
3. Enter a comment in the *Change confirmation status* window. Click on one of the buttons **Decline**, **Tentative** or **Accept**.

Result: If you accept the appointment, it will be entered in your calendar.

Tip: You can accept the appointment directly within the notification area by clicking on the **Accept invitation** button.

How to answer an appointment invitation in an e-mail invitation:

1. Open an E-Mail with an appointment invitation in the E-Mail application.
2. Enter a comment below **This e-mail contains an appointment** in the detail view. Click on one of the buttons **Accept**, **Tentative** or **Decline**.

Result: If you accept the appointment, it will be entered in your calendar.

Note: In the calendar settings you can define whether the invitation e-mail is automatically deleted when accepting or declining an appointment.

User interface:

[The notification area \(p. 28\)](#)

Related topics:

[Changing the appointment confirmation or status \(p. 170\)](#)

[Calendar Settings \(p. 180\)](#)

7.6 Editing appointments

The following options are available:

- You can edit all appointment data in the appointment's editing window.
- You can also change the appointment's time or duration in a calendar view:
 - move an appointment to another day
 - change an appointment's time or duration

Prerequisite: You have the appropriate permissions to modify objects in the calendar containing the appointment.

Notes:

- Depending on the configuration, you can only edit an appointment in your private calendars if you are the appointment's organiser.
- Appointments in subscribed calendars cannot be edited.

How to edit an appointment in the appointment's editing window:

1. Depending on the view, you have the following options:
 - Click on an appointment in a calendar view. Click on **Edit** in the pop-up.
 - Select an appointment in the list view. Click on **Edit** in the tool bar.

When having selected a serial appointment, you are asked to which appointments of the series the changes should be applied:

- When having selected the first appointment of the series, you can either only change the first appointment or the complete series.
- For all other appointments within the series, you can either only change the selected appointment or the selected appointment and all future appointments of the series.

The appointment's data is displayed.

2. Edit the data.
3. Click on **Save**.

How to move an appointment to another day:

1. Select one of the following views: **Work week**, **Week** or **Month**.
2. Drag the appointment to another day.

How to change an appointment's time or duration:

1. Select one of the following views: **Day**, **Work week** or **Week**.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - Drag the appointment to another time.
 - Drag the start or end time to another time.

User interface:

[The appointment editing window \(p. 143\)](#)

Related topics:

[Creating new appointments \(p. 151\)](#)
[Scheduling audio/video conferences \(p. 153\)](#)
[Managing Appointments \(p. 169\)](#)
[Calendar Settings \(p. 180\)](#)

7.7 Calling Appointment Participants

You can launch an audio or video conference with an appointment's participants by calling the appointment participants.

Prerequisite: You have set up an account with an audio or video conference provider, e.g. Zoom.

How to call an appointment's participants:

1. Depending on the view, the following options are available:
 - Click on an appointment in a calendar view. A pop-up opens.
 - Select an appointment in the list view. Click on a participant in the detail view. A pop-up opens. An icon below the name indicates the participant's presence status.
2. Click the **Call** icon. In the menu, click on an audio or video conference provider, e.g. Zoom. The window for calling the contact opens. Click on **Call**.

User interface:

[The Calendar detail view \(p. 141\)](#)

Related topics:

[Scheduling audio/video conferences \(p. 153\)](#)

[Calling the Sender or Another Recipient \(p. 76\)](#)

[Calling Contacts \(p. 119\)](#)

[Setting up and Configuring the Zoom Integration \(p. 44\)](#)

[Setting the presence status \(p. 46\)](#)

7.8 Adding Calendars

With calendars you can organise your appointments e.g. by separately saving your business and private appointments. Learn how to create calendars, use appointments from external calendars and set the view for shared calendars:

- [Adding personal calendars \(p. 166\)](#)
- [Subscribing to external calendars \(p. 167\)](#)
- [Importing calendars from files \(p. 168\)](#)
- [Subscribing to public and shared calendars \(p. 168\)](#)

User interface:

[The Calendar folder view \(p. 137\)](#)

Related topics:

[Managing Appointments \(p. 169\)](#)

[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

7.8.1 Adding personal calendars

You can create additional personal calendars below My calendars.

How to create a new personal calendar:

1. Click on **Add new calendar** in the folder view. A menu opens.
Click the **Personal calendar**.
A window opens.
2. Enter a name. In case the new calendar should be a public calendar, enable **Add as public calendar**.
Click on **Add**.

Related topics:

[Subscribing to external calendars \(p. 167\)](#)

[Importing calendars from files \(p. 168\)](#)

[Moving appointments to another calendar \(p. 172\)](#)

7.8.2 Subscribing to external calendars

You can import appointments from external calendars into groupware calendars by subscribing to the external calendar. You can subscribe to the following calendars:

- Calendars that are publicly available on the Internet. Those are e.g., calendars with international public holidays, sport events, media events or stock exchanges.
- Your Google calendar
- iCal calendars that are publicly available on the Internet. To do so, you need to know the calendar's URL.



Notes:

- Appointment changes in external calendars are automatically synced to the subscribed calendar after a short time.
- You cannot create or edit appointments in subscribed calendars.

How to subscribe to external calendars:

1. Click on **Add new calendar** in the folder view. A menu opens.
2. The following options are available:
 - To subscribe to a public calendar, click on **Browse calendars of interest**. The *Add calendar* window opens.
Note: Depending on the configuration, this function might not be available.
Select the language and country of the calendar that you want to subscribe to.
Select one or several calendars. Click on **Save**.
 - To subscribe to your Google calendar, click on **Google calendar**. A new browser window opens.
Grant access to your Google calendar.
The appointments will be imported to a new calendar. As soon as the import has been completed, the *Subscribe calendar* window will be closed.
 - To subscribe to an iCal calendar, click on **Subscribe via URL (iCal)**. The *Subscribe to iCal feed* window opens.
Enter an iCal URL. Click on **Subscribe**.

Options:

- The reminder that is set as default in the calendar settings is applied to all appointments of a public calendar or an iCal calendar.
In order to change this reminder for each appointment in this calendar, click the **Actions** icon  next to the calendar. Click on **Change reminders**.
To change an appointment's reminder, use the appointment's detail view or pop-up
Note: Those functions are not available for Google calendars you subscribed to.
- In order to refresh the subscribed data, click the **Action** icon  next to the calendar. Click on **Refresh this calendar**.

Related topics:

- [Adding personal calendars \(p. 166\)](#)
- [Importing calendars from files \(p. 168\)](#)

7.8.3 Importing calendars from files

You can import calendars that have been created from within other applications. The calendar you want to import needs to be available as an iCal file.

How to import calendars from a file:

1. Click on **Add new calendar** in the folder view. A menu opens.
Click on **Upload file**. The *Import from file* window opens.
2. Click on **Upload file**. Select a file.
3. Enter a name for the new calendar. Click on **Import**.

Result: A new calendar will be added.

Note: All participants of the imported appointments will be removed. Instead, you will be added as participant.

Related topics:

- [Adding personal calendars \(p. 166\)](#)
- [Subscribing to external calendars \(p. 167\)](#)
- [Importing appointments \(p. 172\)](#)

7.8.4 Subscribing to public and shared calendars

Calendars that are public or shared by other users can be used as follows:

- You can define which public and shared groupware calendars are displayed in the folder view by subscribing to such calendars.
This helps you to keep a better overview if there are many public and shared calendars in your groupware environment.
- If you subscribed to such a calendar, you can set whether this calendar will be synchronised with other clients, e.g. with your smartphone.
- If you no longer need such a calendar, you can cancel the subscription.

How to define the calendars to which you want to subscribe and which are to be synchronised:

1. In the folder view, click on **Add new calendar**. A menu opens.
Click on **Subscribe shared Calendar**.
You can also use the **Subscribe shared Calendar** button in the E-Mail settings.
A window opens. It shows your private, public and shared calendars.
2. If you want a calendar to be displayed, enable the **subscribe to calendar** button .
To define that a displayed calendar is synchronised, enable the **Synchronise via DAV** checkbox.
If you no longer want a calendar to be displayed and synchronised, disable the **subscribe to calendar** button .

User interface:

- [The Calendar folder view \(p. 137\)](#)
- [Calendar Settings \(p. 180\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Accessing other users' shares \(p. 253\)](#)
- [Downloading Personal Data \(p. 261\)](#)

7.9 Managing Appointments

Learn how to organise your appointments and about the appointment actions available.

- [Changing the appointment confirmation or status \(p. 170\)](#)
- [Changing appointment reminders \(p. 171\)](#)
- [Changing the organiser \(p. 171\)](#)
- [Managing favourite time zones \(p. 172\)](#)
- [Using calendar colours \(p. 172\)](#)
- [Moving appointments to another calendar \(p. 172\)](#)
- [Importing appointments \(p. 172\)](#)
- [Exporting appointments \(p. 174\)](#)
- [Printing appointments \(p. 175\)](#)
- [Deleting appointments \(p. 176\)](#)

User interface:

- [The Calendar tool bar \(p. 135\)](#)
- [Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year calendar view. \(p. 138\)](#)
- [The Calendar pop-up \(p. 140\)](#)
- [The Calendar detail view \(p. 141\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Editing appointments \(p. 163\)](#)
- [Adding Calendars \(p. 165\)](#)

7.9.1 Changing the appointment confirmation or status

You can change your appointment status at a later point of time. The following options are available:

- You can accept or decline the appointment without comment.
- You can change the confirmation status. You can add a comment that is visible to other participants.

Notes:

- Depending on the configuration, you can only edit an appointment confirmation in your private calendars if you are a participant of the appointment.
- In recurring appointments you can change the confirmation for a single occurrence or for the complete series.

How to accept or decline an appointment:

1. Depending on the view, you have the following options:
 - Click on an appointment in a calendar view. A pop-up opens.
 - Select an appointment in the list view. Double-click on the appointment. The appointment will be displayed in a window.
Click on **Accept** or on **Decline**.
2. When having selected a recurring appointment, set whether the changes should be applied to the single occurrence or for the complete series.

How to change your confirmation status:

1. Depending on the view, you have the following options:
 - Click on an appointment in a calendar view. In the pop-up, click on **Change status**.
 - Select an appointment in the list view. Double-click on the appointment. Click on **Change status** in the tool bar.
2. When having selected a recurring appointment, set whether the changes should be applied to the single occurrence or for the complete series.
3. Enter a comment in the *Change confirmation status* window. Click on one of the buttons **Decline**, **Tentative** or **Accept**.

Related topics:

[Answering Appointment Invitations \(p. 162\)](#)

7.9.2 Changing appointment reminders

You can change your appointment reminder later by adjusting or removing a reminder or by adding another reminder.

How to change an appointment reminder:

1. Depending on the view, you have the following options:
 - Click on an appointment in a calendar view. A pop-up opens.
 - Select an appointment in the list view. Double-click on the appointment. The appointment will be displayed in a window.Click on **Change reminders**. The *Change reminders* window opens.
2. Click on a reminder. The *Edit reminders* window opens.
You can edit or delete a reminder or add a new one.

Related topics:

[Using appointment reminders \(p. 155\)](#)



7.9.3 Changing the organiser

If you are the organiser of an appointment or a serial appointment with at least two participants, you can change the organiser. You cannot change the organiser for the following appointments:

- an appointment with external participants
- an individually changed appointment within a series

Note: Depending on the configuration, this function might not be available.


How to change an appointment's organiser:

1. Depending on the view, you have the following options:
 - Click on an appointment in a calendar view.
In the pop-up, click the **More actions** icon .
 - Select an appointment or multiple appointments in the list view.
Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar.Click on **Change organiser**.
2. When having selected a recurring appointment, set whether the changes should be applied to the single occurrence or for the complete series.
3. Enter the new organiser's E-Mail address in the *Change organiser* window.
Note: External participants can not be set as organiser.

7.9.4 Managing favourite time zones

Time zones marked as favourites by you, can be displayed in the calendar sheet in addition to the preset time zone.

How to mark a time zone as favourite:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **Calendar** in the sidebar. Click on **Favourite time zones**.
3. Click on **Add time zone** in the display area. The *Select favourite time zone* window opens.
4. Select a time zone from the list. Click on **Add**.

To remove a time zone from the list of favourites, click the **Delete** icon  next to the time zone.


Related topics:

- [The appointment editing window \(p. 143\)](#)
- [Displaying multiple time zones \(p. 146\)](#)

7.9.5 Using calendar colours

You can assign a colour to a calendar. All appointments in this calendar will then be displayed in the colour of the calendar. If you assign an individual colour to an appointment when creating or editing it, the appointment will be displayed in the colour assigned, not in the colour of the calendar.

How to select a calendar colour:

1. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the calendar name, in the folder view.
2. Select a colour from the colour selection drop down.

Related topics:



- [How are appointments displayed in a calendar view? \(p. 147\)](#)
- [The Calendar folder view \(p. 137\)](#)

7.9.6 Moving appointments to another calendar

You can move appointments to another calendar.

Prerequisite: You need to have the appropriate permissions to create objects in the target calendar.

How to move appointments to another calendar:

1. Depending on the view, you have the following options:
 - Click on an appointment in a calendar view. In the pop-up, click the **More actions** icon .
 - Select an appointment or multiple appointments in the list view. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar.Click on **Move**.
2. Select a calendar in the *Move* window. You can create a new calendar by clicking on **Create folder**.
3. Click on **Move**.


Related topics:

- [Adding personal calendars \(p. 166\)](#)

7.9.7 Importing appointments

You can import appointments from files in iCal format.

How to import appointments from an iCal file:

1. Select the calendar for importing the appointments to in the folder view.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the calendar. Click on **Import**.
3. In the *Import from file* window, click on **Upload file**. Select a file in iCal format.
To also import appointments that have the same ID as already existing appointments, enable **Ignore existing appointments**.
4. Click on **Import**.

Result: The contacts are added to the calendar.

Note: All participants of the imported appointments will be removed. Instead, you will be added as participant.

Related topics:

[Exporting appointments \(p. 174\)](#)



[Creating Appointments \(p. 150\)](#)

[Importing calendars from files \(p. 168\)](#)


7.9.8 Exporting appointments

You can export appointments in the iCalendar format. You can e.g. use this format to exchange appointments with other calendar applications. You can export individual appointments or all appointments from a calendar.

How to export individual appointments:

1. Depending on the view, you have the following options:
 - Click on an appointment in a calendar view.
In the pop-up, click the **More actions** icon .
 - Select an appointment or multiple appointments in the list view.
Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar.
Click on **Export**. A window opens.
2. Select the function for saving the export file.

How to export all appointments from a calendar:

1. Select a personal or public address book in the folder view.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Export**. A window opens.
3. Select the function for saving the export file.

Related topics:

[Importing appointments \(p. 172\)](#)

[Downloading Personal Data \(p. 261\)](#)

7.9.9 Printing appointments



To print calendars and appointments you can:

- print a calendar sheet with appointments
- print appointment data
- print a detailed or compact list of appointments


How to print a calendar sheet with appointments:

1. Click on **View** in the tool bar. Select one of the following entries: **Day**, **Work week**, **Week** or **Month**.
2. Open a calendar in the folder view.
3. Click on **View** in the tool bar. Click on **Print**. A window with a print preview opens.
4. If required, change the printer settings. Click on the **Print** button.
5. Close the print preview window.

How to print an appointment's data:

1. Depending on the view, you have the following options:
 - Click on an appointment in a calendar view. In the pop-up, click the **More actions** icon .
 - Select an appointment or multiple appointments in the list view. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar.Click on **Print**. A window with a print preview opens.
2. If required, change the printer settings. Click on the **Print** button.
3. Close the print preview window.

How to print a list of appointments:

1. Click on **View** in the tool bar. Select **List**.
2. Select the appointments to be printed.
3. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Print**. A window opens. You are asked how you want to print the appointments.
 - To print a list with detailed appointment data, click on **Detailed**.
 - To print a compact list, click on **Compact**.
4. If required, change the printer settings. Click on the **Print** button.
5. Close the print preview window.

7.9.10 Deleting appointments

Warning: If you delete an appointment it will be irrevocably lost. Depending on the configuration, you can only delete an appointment in your private calendars if you are the appointment's organiser.

How to delete appointments:

1. Depending on the view, you have the following options:
 - Click on an appointment in a calendar view. In the pop-up, click on **Delete**.
 - Select an appointment or multiple appointments in the list view. Click on **Delete** in the tool bar.
2. Confirm that you want to delete the appointment.

Result: The appointment will be deleted.

Options:

- When having selected a serial appointment, you are asked which appointments of the series are to be deleted:
 - When having selected the first appointment of the series, you can either only delete the first appointment or the complete series.
 - When having selected an appointment within the series, you can either only delete the selected appointment or the selected appointment and all future appointments of the series.
 - When having selected the last appointment of the series, you can only delete the last appointment. In the latter case, you are not asked which appointments are to be deleted.
- If you are the appointment's organiser, you can inform other participants about the reason for the deletion by entering a message. The input field is shown if the following conditions are met:
 - The appointment has at least two participants.
 - **Receive notification for appointment changes** is enabled in the calendar settings. The message is sent as E-Mail.

7.10 Searching for Appointments

In order to search for specific appointments, you can use the following search criteria:

- search terms for subject, description, location, attachments' names, participants
- calendars that are to be searched
- appointment confirmation status
- time frame of the appointment creation, related to the current date: one month, three months, one year
- type: all, series, single appointment

How to search for appointments:

1. Click on the **Search** input field. Enter a search term in the input field.
The search menu opens.
2. Define the data sources to be searched by clicking on an entry in the search menu.
 - If clicking on the search term or pressing enter, the following data sources are searched: subject, description
 - In order to only search in the subject, click on **in subject** in the search menu.
Accordingly, you can limit the search to the description, location or the attachment's name.
 - In order to search for appointments with a specific participant, click on a name in the search menu.
The search results are displayed in the list that is shown in the display area.
3. To select a calendar for the search, click on the calendar name next to the input field.
If you select **All folders**, all private, public, and shared calendars are searched.
4. To limit the search to specific appointments, click on **Options** ▼ next to the input field. Use the following methods:
 - To limit the search to appointments with a specific confirmation status, select a status.
 - To limit the search to a specific time range, select a range.
 - To limit the search to single or recurring appointments, select a type.
 - To limit the search to private, public or shared appointments, select a folder type.
5. To refine the search result, enter additional search terms: To remove a search term, click the **Remove** icon ✕ next to the search term.
6. In order to finish the search, click the **Cancel search** icon ⌫ in the input field.

User interface:

[The search bar \(p. 23\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying appointments in the list view \(p. 148\)](#)



7.11 Managing Groups

In case you frequently want to add the same persons to appointments or tasks, you can create a [group](#) consisting of those persons. You can then add the group as participant instead of adding single persons. The following options are available:


- create a new group
- edit an existing group
- delete an existing group

Note: Depending on the configuration, those functions are not available for all users.


How to create a new group:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
In the side bar, click on **Groups**.
2. In the display area, click on **Create new group**.
3. Enter a group name in the *Create new group* window. Add members. The members are displayed below **Members**
In order to remove a member, click the **Remove member** icon  next to the name.
Click on **Create**.

How to edit a group:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
In the side bar, click on **Groups**.
2. Select a group in the display area. Click on **Edit**.
3. Edit the group's data in the *Edit group* window.
Click on **Save**.

How to delete a group:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
In the side bar, click on **Groups**.
2. Select a group in the display area.
3. Click the **Delete** button.

Related topics:

[Managing Resources \(p. 179\)](#)


7.12 Managing Resources

Other than participant conflicts, [resource](#) conflicts cannot be ignored when creating appointments. If creating appointments, resources that are already booked for other appointments can not be added. The following options are available:


- create new resources
- edit existing resources
- delete existing resources

Note: Depending on the configuration, those functions are not available for all users.


How to create a new resource:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
In the side bar, click on **Resources**.
2. In the display area, click on **Create new resource**.
3. Enter a resource name in the *Create new resource* window. You can enter a description.
Define an E-Mail address for the resource.
Click on **Create**.

How to edit a resource:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
In the side bar, click on **Resources**.
2. Select a resource in the display area. Click on **Edit**.
3. Edit the resource's data in the *Edit resource* window.
Click on **Save**.

How to delete a resource:


1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
In the side bar, click on **Resources**.
2. Select a resource in the display area.
3. Click the **Delete** button.

Related topics:

[Managing Groups \(p. 178\)](#)

7.13 Calendar Settings

How to use the calendar settings:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **Calendar** in the side bar.

Depending on the configuration, the following settings are available:

Buttons

- **Subscribe to iCal calendars**
See [Subscribing to public and shared calendars \(p. 168\)](#)

View

- **Start of working time**
Defines the start of working hours.
- **End of working time**
Defines the end of working hours.
- **Time scale**
Specifies the interval for dividing the time grid in the **Day**, **Work week**, and **Week** calendar views.
- **Display refused appointments**
Defines whether appointments that you refused are displayed.

Birthday calendar

- **Show birthday calendar**
Defines whether a birthday calendar is displayed in the folder view.

Workweek view

- **Week start**
Defines the beginning of a work week.
- **Workweek length**
Defines the number of days of a work week.

See [Day, Work week, Week, Month or Year calendar view. \(p. 138\)](#)

New appointment

Defines default settings for new appointments.

- **Default reminder time when creating the following appointments:**
 - normal appointments or serial appointments
 - all day appointments
 - birthday calendar appointments

To change a setting, click on the current setting. Change the current reminder in the *Edit reminders* window. You can add additional reminders.
- **Mark all day appointments as free**
Defines whether all day appointments are displayed as free by default.
- **Participants can edit appointments**
Defines whether participants by default get the permission to edit an appointment.

E-mail notifications

Specifies whether you will receive an E-Mail notification, if the following is true:

- **Receive notifications when an appointment in which you participate is created, modified or deleted**
An appointment in which you participate has been re-created, changed or deleted.
- **Receive notification as appointment creator when participants accept or decline**
a participant accepted or declined an appointment created by you.
- **Receive notification as appointment participant when other participants accept or decline**
a participant accepted or declined an appointment in which you participate.
- **Automatically delete the invitation e-mail after the appointment has been accepted or declined**
Defines whether the E-Mail notification for an appointment invitation will be automatically deleted when accepting or declining the appointment. See [Answering Appointment Invitations \(p. 162\)](#)

Reminders**▪ Show reminders for past appointments**

Defines whether appointment reminders are displayed for past appointments.

Related topics:


[Editing appointments \(p. 163\)](#)

8 Tasks

Learn how to work with the Tasks application.

- [The Tasks Components \(p. 184\)](#)
- [Viewing Tasks \(p. 190\)](#)
- [Viewing or Saving Task Attachments \(p. 191\)](#)
- [Creating Tasks \(p. 192\)](#)
- [Answering Task Invitations \(p. 195\)](#)
- [Editing tasks \(p. 196\)](#)
- [Calling Task Participants \(p. 197\)](#)
- [Adding Task Folders \(p. 198\)](#)
- [Managing tasks \(p. 200\)](#)
- [Searching for Tasks \(p. 204\)](#)
- [Task Settings \(p. 205\)](#)

How to start the Tasks app

Click the **All Applications** icon  in the menu bar. Click on **Tasks** in the App Launcher.

8.1 The Tasks Components


Learn about the components of the Tasks app user interface and how to use them:

- [The Tasks tool bar \(p. 185\)](#)
- [The Tasks folder view \(p. 186\)](#)
- [The Tasks display area \(p. 186\)](#)
 - [The Tasks list \(p. 187\)](#)
 - [The Tasks detail view \(p. 188\)](#)
- [The editing window \(p. 189\)](#)

8.1.1 The Tasks tool bar

Contains functions for creating, editing and organising tasks. Note: Some functions are only available if you opened a folder for which you have the appropriate permissions to create or edit objects.

Content

- **New task.** Creates a new task.
- **Edit.** Edits a task's data.
- **Due.** Changes a task's due date.
- **Done.** Marks a task as done.
- **Delete.** Deletes the tasks selected by you.
- **More actions** icon . Opens a menu with further functions.
- **View.** Opens a menu with check boxes for controlling the view.
 - **Folder view.** Opens or closes the folder view.
 - **Checkboxes.** Displays checkboxes in the list, for marking objects.

General description of the user interface:

[The tool bar \(p. 24\)](#)

Related topics:

[Creating Tasks \(p. 192\)](#)

[Managing tasks \(p. 200\)](#)

8.1.2 The Tasks folder view

Displays the task folders.


In order to display the folder view, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **Folder view**.

Content

- **My tasks.** Contains your personal tasks.
- **Public tasks.** Contains tasks shared with all users.
- **Shared tasks.** Contains tasks shared with you by other users.

Depending on the configuration, the content can differ from this information.

Functions

- If clicking on a folder, its tasks are displayed.
- The **Actions** icon  next to the selected folder offers functions for organising data and for exchanging data.
You can also use the **context menu**.
- The **Add new folder** button opens a menu with functions for creating folders and for subscribing to shared folders.
- To adjust the folder view width, hover over the line between the folder view and the display area. Drag the border to the left or to the right.

General description of the user interface:

[The folder view \(p. 25\)](#)

Related topics:

[Viewing Tasks \(p. 190\)](#)

[Adding Task Folders \(p. 198\)](#)

[Subscribing to public and shared task folders \(p. 199\)](#)

[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

[Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)

8.1.3 The Tasks display area

Contains the tasks list and a task's detail view.

General description of the user interface:

[The display area \(p. 26\)](#)

Related topics:

[The Tasks list \(p. 187\)](#)

[The Tasks detail view \(p. 188\)](#)

8.1.4 The Tasks list

Displays a list of tasks in the folder selected.

Content

- The following details are displayed for each task: subject, status or due date, and the progress.
- The text above the list contains the name of the selected folder. The number corresponds to the number of objects in the selected folder.

Functions

- If clicking on a task, its content is displayed in the detail view.
- To select multiple tasks, enable the **Checkboxes** option in the **View** drop-down in the tool bar. You can also use your system's multi-selection functions. In order to select all tasks in the folder, enable the **Select all** checkbox above the list.
- If clicking the **Sort** icon ▼▲ above the list, a menu opens that allows sorting tasks. You can also define in this menu whether tasks marked done are displayed.
- To adjust the list width, hover over the line between the list and the detail view. Drag the border to the left or to the right.

Related topics:

[The Tasks display area \(p. 186\)](#)

[The Tasks detail view \(p. 188\)](#)

[Viewing Tasks \(p. 190\)](#)


[Viewing or Saving Task Attachments \(p. 191\)](#)

[Managing tasks \(p. 200\)](#)

8.1.5 The Tasks detail view

Shows the data of the task that you selected in the list. If double-clicking on the task in the list, the data are displayed in a window.

Content

- Icon for the task's priority, if set.
Subject
Private tasks are marked with the **Private** icon .
- Task's start date, if available
- Status and progress
- If the task has attachments, the names of the attachments are displayed.
- Task's description, if available
- If the task is a recurring task, recurrence parameters will be displayed.
- Task's start date, if available
- Task details like billing information, if available
- If the task has several participants, the number of participants that accepted, declined or have not replied yet are shown on the top right side above the list of participants. In order to filter the list of participants, click the icons.
- Names of the participants, if they exist.
If clicking on a name, a pop-up opens. It displays the participant's **Halo View**.
- If the appointment includes external participants, their names are displayed below **External participants**.

Related topics:

- [The Tasks display area \(p. 186\)](#)
- [The Tasks list \(p. 187\)](#)
- [Viewing Tasks \(p. 190\)](#)
- [Viewing or Saving Task Attachments \(p. 191\)](#)
- [Calling Task Participants \(p. 197\)](#)
- [Displaying Contacts in the Halo View \(p. 111\)](#)

8.1.6 The editing window


This window is used when creating a new task or editing an existing one.

In order to open the window, do one of the following:

- Click on **New task** in the tool bar.
- Select a task. Click on **Edit** in the tool bar.

This window is used when creating a new task or editing a task.

Content

- Task data.
 - **Subject, Description** input fields. The subject is displayed as task title. A description can be entered optionally.
 - **Expand form**. Displays additional input fields.
 - **Start date** and **Due date**. Defines the start and the due date. Clicking on it opens the date picker. If **All day** is disabled, you can set start and due times.
 - **All day**. Defines whether the task is supposed to last whole days.
 - **Repeat**. Defines whether the task is to be repeated.
- **Reminder**. Defines when and how you will be reminded about the task's due date. You can also set a date and time for the reminder in **Reminder date**. In this case, **Manual input** will be pre-selected in the **Reminder** field.
- Task view
 - **Status**. Defines the task's status. You can also enter a percentage value for the task completion in **Progress**.
 - **Priority**. Defines the task's priority.
 - **Private**. Enable this checkbox if other users are not to see the task's subject and description.
- **Add contact** input field. Enter the names of the participants that are to take part in the task in this field.
Select contacts icon . Opens a window for selecting contacts from a list.
- **Add attachments**. Adds files.
- **Show details**. Displays additional data fields where you can enter billing details like estimated efforts, actual efforts or billing information.

General description of the user interface:

[The editing window \(p. 29\)](#)

Related topics:

[The date picker \(p. 139\)](#)

[Creating new tasks \(p. 193\)](#)

[Editing tasks \(p. 196\)](#)


8.2 Viewing Tasks

Learn how to display the tasks in a tasks folder in different ways:

How to display a task:

1. Open a task folder in the folder view.
2. Click on a task in the list. The task's data is displayed in the detail view.

Options:

- To sort the task list or to only display due tasks, click the **Sort** icon  above the list.
- You can open the task in a window by double-clicking on the task in the list.

User interface:

[The Tasks folder view \(p. 186\)](#)

[The Tasks detail view \(p. 188\)](#)

[The Tasks list \(p. 187\)](#)

Related topics:

[Viewing or Saving Task Attachments \(p. 191\)](#)

[Navigating within the folder structure \(p. 241\)](#)

[Searching for Tasks \(p. 204\)](#)

8.3 Viewing or Saving Task Attachments

The file names of task attachments are displayed in the display area below the subject. The following functions are available:

- display the attachment in the Viewer
- download the attachment
- save the attachment to Drive

Note: Depending on the attachment's file format, the available function might differ.

How to use the task attachment functions:

1. Select a task with an attachment.
2. Click on an attachment's name in the detail view. Click on the function wanted.
If there are several attachments, an action can be executed for all attachments at once. To do so, click on **All attachments**.

Note: Depending on the configuration, attachments will be checked for viruses before being downloaded.

- If no virus is found, the attachments will be downloaded without any further notification.
- If a virus scan was not possible or a virus was found, a window with a respective warning opens. In this case you can cancel the download.

Related topics:

[Viewing Tasks \(p. 190\)](#)

[The Tasks detail view \(p. 188\)](#)

[The Tasks list \(p. 187\)](#)

8.4 Creating Tasks

Learn how to create a task and about the functions available for defining the task data:

- [Creating new tasks \(p. 193\)](#)
- [Creating recurring tasks \(p. 194\)](#)
- [Adding participants to a task \(p. 194\)](#)
- [Adding attachments \(p. 194\)](#)

User interface:

[The Tasks tool bar \(p. 185\)](#)

Related topics:

[Importing tasks \(p. 202\)](#)


[Creating Appointments \(p. 150\)](#)

8.4.1 Creating new tasks

How to create a new task:

1. Open a task folder in the folder view.
Note: Select a folder for which you have the permission to create tasks.
2. Click on **New task** in the tool bar.
3. Enter a subject. Enter a description, if needed.
4. Click on **Create**.

Options:

- To view the complete form, click on **Expand form**. The following optional functions are available:
 - Set the task's start and due date.
 - To get an appointment reminder, select a setting in **Reminder**. The respective date and time are entered in **Reminder date**.
To use custom values, set them in **Reminder date**. In this case, **Manual input** will be pre-selected in the **Reminder** field.
 - If the subject and description are not to be shown to other users, activate **Private**. Private tasks are marked with the **Private** icon .
 - In order to add details like billing information, click on **Show details**. Enter the data required.

User interface:

[The editing window \(p. 189\)](#)

Subordinated actions:

[Using the date picker \(p. 152\)](#)
[Creating recurring tasks \(p. 194\)](#)
[Adding participants to a task \(p. 194\)](#)
[Adding attachments \(p. 194\)](#)

Related topics:

[Creating E-Mail reminders \(p. 83\)](#)
[Editing tasks \(p. 196\)](#)

8.4.2 Creating recurring tasks

How to create a recurring task in the task editing window:

1. To view the complete form, click on **Expand form**.
2. Enable **Repeat**. The current repetition parameters are displayed.
3. To set the repetition parameters, click on the value.
4. Set the repetition parameters:
 - In **Repeat**, you can set the interval between the appointments.
 - Below the interval, you can set the interval parameters.
 - In **Ends**, you can define when the recurring tasks ends.



Tip: Application examples can be found in [Setting recurring appointments \(p. 154\)](#)

Superordinated action:

[Creating new tasks \(p. 193\)](#)
[Editing tasks \(p. 196\)](#)

8.4.3 Adding participants to a task

How to add participants in the task editing window:

1. In the input field below **Participant**, enter: the E-Mail address of the participant or the name of a group or distribution list.
 - While entering the recipients, matching suggestions will be displayed. To accept a suggestion, click on it.
 - To select contacts from an address book, click the **Select contact** icon  on the right side of the input field.
2. In order to remove a participant, click the **Remove** icon  next to the name.

Superordinated action:


[Creating new tasks \(p. 193\)](#)
[Editing tasks \(p. 196\)](#)

Related topics:

[Selecting contacts from an address book \(p. 68\)](#)

8.4.4 Adding attachments

How to add attachments in the task editing window:

1. Click on **Add attachments** below **Attachments**.
2. Select at least one file.
In order to remove an attachment, click the **Delete attachment** icon .

Tip: You can also add an attachment by dragging and dropping a document from a file browser or from the desktop to the task window.

Superordinated action:

[Creating new tasks \(p. 193\)](#)
[Editing tasks \(p. 196\)](#)


8.5 Answering Task Invitations

If a user or an external partner adds you to a task as participant, you will receive at least one of the following notifications:

- You are informed about this task in the Notification area.
- You will receive an E-Mail invitation for the task.

You can accept, temporarily accept or refuse your participation in the task.

How to answer a task invitation in the notification area:

1. Click the **Notifications** icon  in the menu bar. The Notification area is displayed.
2. Click on **Accept/Decline** below the invitation.
3. Enter a comment in the *Change confirmation status* window. Click on one of the buttons **Accept**, **Tentative** or **Decline**.

Tip: You can confirm the task directly in the notification area by clicking on the **Accept invitation** button.

How to answer a task invitation in an email invitation:

1. Display an E-Mail with a task invitation in the E-Mail application.
2. Click on one of the buttons **Confirm**, **Temporary**, **Decline** in the detail view below **This e-mail contains a task**.

User interface:

[The notification area \(p. 28\)](#)

8.6 Editing tasks

You can edit a task's data at a later point.

Prerequisite: You have the permission to create objects in the folder containing the task.

How to edit a task:

1. Select a task from the list.
2. Click on **Edit** in the tool bar. The task's data are displayed.
3. Edit the data.
4. Click on **Save**.

User interface:

[The editing window \(p. 189\)](#)

Subordinated actions:

[Using the date picker \(p. 152\)](#)
[Creating recurring tasks \(p. 194\)](#)
[Adding participants to a task \(p. 194\)](#)
[Adding attachments \(p. 194\)](#)

Related topics:

[Marking tasks as done \(p. 201\)](#)
[Changing a task's due date \(p. 201\)](#)
[Changing tasks confirmations \(p. 202\)](#)
[Creating new tasks \(p. 193\)](#)

8.7 Calling Task Participants

You can launch an audio or video conference with a task participant by calling the task participants.

Prerequisite: You have set up an account with an audio or video conference provider, e.g. Zoom.

How to call a task participant:

1. Select a task from the list. Click on a participant in the detail view. A pop-up opens.
An icon below the name indicates the participant's presence status.
2. Click the **Call** icon in the detail view. In the menu, click on an audio or video conference provider, e.g. Zoom. The window for calling the contact opens. Click on **Call**.

User interface:

[The Tasks detail view \(p. 188\)](#)

Related topics:

[Calling the Sender or Another Recipient \(p. 76\)](#)

[Calling Appointment Participants \(p. 164\)](#)

[Scheduling audio/video conferences \(p. 153\)](#)

[Setting up and Configuring the Zoom Integration \(p. 44\)](#)

[Setting the presence status \(p. 46\)](#)

8.8 Adding Task Folders

With task folders you can organise your tasks, e.g. by separately saving tasks for customers or projects. Learn how to create personal task folders and how to set the view for shared task folders:

- [Adding personal task folders \(p. 199\)](#)
- [Subscribing to public and shared task folders \(p. 199\)](#)

User interface:

[The Tasks folder view \(p. 186\)](#)

Related topics:

[Managing tasks \(p. 200\)](#)

[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

8.8.1 Adding personal task folders

You can create additional personal task folders below My tasks.

How to create a new personal task folder:

1. In the folder view, click on **Add new folder**. A menu opens.
Click on **Personal folder**. A window opens.
2. Enter a name. In case the new folder should be a public folder, enable **Add as public folder**. Click on **Add**.

Related topics:

[Moving tasks to another folder \(p. 201\)](#)

[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

8.8.2 Subscribing to public and shared task folders

Task folders that are public or shared by other users can be used as follows:

- You can define which public and shared task folders are displayed in the folder view by subscribing to such folders.
This helps you to keep a better overview if there are many public and shared task folders in your groupware environment.
- If you subscribed to such a task folder, you can set whether this task folder will be synchronised with other clients, e.g. with your smartphone.
- If you no longer need such a task folder, you can cancel the subscription.

How to define the task folders to which you want to subscribe and which are to be synchronised:

1. In the folder view, click on **Add new folder**. A menu opens.
Click on **Subscribe shared task folder**.
You can also use the **Subscribe shared task folder** button in the tasks settings.
A window opens. It shows your private, public and shared task folders.
2. If you want a task folder to be displayed, enable the **subscribe task folder** button .
If you want a displayed task folder to be synchronised, enable the **Synchronise via DAV** checkbox.
If you no longer want a task folder to be displayed and synchronised, disable the **subscribe task folder** button.

User interface:

[The Tasks folder view \(p. 186\)](#)

[Task Settings \(p. 205\)](#)

Related topics:

[Accessing other users' shares \(p. 253\)](#)

[Downloading Personal Data \(p. 261\)](#)

8.9 Managing tasks

Learn how to organise your tasks and about the available task actions.

- [Marking tasks as done \(p. 201\)](#)
- [Changing a task's due date \(p. 201\)](#)
- [Moving tasks to another folder \(p. 201\)](#)
- [Changing tasks confirmations \(p. 202\)](#)
- [Importing tasks \(p. 202\)](#)
- [Exporting tasks \(p. 203\)](#)
- [Printing tasks \(p. 203\)](#)
- [Deleting tasks \(p. 203\)](#)

User interface:

[The Tasks tool bar \(p. 185\)](#)

Related topics:

[Adding Task Folders \(p. 198\)](#)

8.9.1 Marking tasks as done

You can mark tasks as done.

Prerequisite: You have the permission to create objects in the folder containing the task.

How to mark a task as done:

1. Select a task or multiple tasks from the list.
2. Click on **Done** in the tool bar.
To mark the selected tasks as undone, click on **Undone**.

Related topics:

- [Editing tasks \(p. 196\)](#)
- [Changing a task's due date \(p. 201\)](#)
- [Changing tasks confirmations \(p. 202\)](#)

8.9.2 Changing a task's due date

You can change a task's due date.

Prerequisite: You have the permission to create objects in the folder containing the task.

How to change a task's due date:

1. Select a task from the list.
2. Click on **Due** in the tool bar. Select an entry.

Related topics:


- [Editing tasks \(p. 196\)](#)
- [Marking tasks as done \(p. 201\)](#)
- [Changing tasks confirmations \(p. 202\)](#)

8.9.3 Moving tasks to another folder

You can move tasks to another folder.

Prerequisite: You need to have the appropriate permissions to create objects in the target folder.

How to move tasks to another folder:

1. Select a task or multiple tasks from the list.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Move**.
3. Select a folder in the *Move* window. You can create a new folder by clicking on **Create folder**.
4. Click on **Move**.

Tip: You can also move the selected objects by dragging the objects from the folder view to a folder.


Related topics:

- [Adding personal task folders \(p. 199\)](#)

8.9.4 Changing tasks confirmations

You can change your task confirmation at a later point in time.

How to change your task confirmation:

1. Select a task from the list.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Change confirmation status**.
3. A window opens. Select a confirmation status. If required, enter a message.
4. Click on **Change status**.


Related topics:

- [Editing tasks \(p. 196\)](#)
- [Marking tasks as done \(p. 201\)](#)
- [Changing a task's due date \(p. 201\)](#)

8.9.5 Importing tasks

You can import tasks from files in iCal format.

How to import tasks from an iCal file:

1. Select the task folder for importing the tasks to in the folder view.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the task folder. Click on **Import**.
3. In the *Import from file* window, click on **Upload file**. Select a file in iCal format.
To also import tasks that have the same id as already existing tasks, enable **Ignore existing events**.
4. Click on **Import**.

Result: The tasks are added to the folder.


Related topics:

- [Exporting tasks \(p. 203\)](#)
- [Creating new tasks \(p. 193\)](#)


8.9.6 Exporting tasks

You can export tasks in the iCalendar format. You can e.g. use this format to exchange tasks with other calendar applications. You can export individual tasks or all tasks from a folder.

How to export individual tasks:

1. Select a task or multiple tasks from the list.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Export**. The *Export selected* window opens.
3. Click on **Export**. Complete the entries.

How to export all tasks from a folder:

1. Select a personal or public tasks folder in the folder view.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Export**. The *Export folder* window opens.
3. Click on **Export**. Complete the entries.

Related topics:


[Importing tasks \(p. 202\)](#)

[Downloading Personal Data \(p. 261\)](#)

8.9.7 Printing tasks

You can print the data of a single task or of multiple tasks.

How to print a task's data:

1. Select a task or multiple tasks from the list.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Print**. A window with a print preview opens.
3. If required, change the printer settings. Click on the **Print** button.
4. Close the print preview window.

8.9.8 Deleting tasks

You can delete tasks.

Warning: When deleting a task, the task is irrevocably lost.

How to delete tasks:

1. Select a task or multiple tasks from the list.
2. Click on **Delete** in the tool bar.
3. Confirm that you want to delete the task.

Result: The task will be deleted.

8.10 Searching for Tasks

How to search for tasks:

1. Click on the **Search** input field. Enter a search term in the input field.
The search menu opens.
2. Define the data sources to be searched by clicking on an entry in the search menu.
 - If clicking on the search term or pressing enter, the following data sources are searched: subject, description
 - In order to only search in the subject, click on **in subject** in the search menu. Accordingly, you can limit the search to the description or the attachment's name.
 - In order to search for appointments with a specific participant, click on a name in the search menu.The search results are displayed in the list that is shown in the display area.
3. To select a folder for the search, click on the folder name next to the input field.
If you select **All folders**, all private, public, and shared folders are searched.
4. To limit the search to specific tasks, click on **Options** ▼ next to the input field. Use the following methods:
 - To limit the search to tasks with a specific editing status, select a task status.
 - To limit the search to single or recurring tasks, select a task type.
 - To limit the search to private, public or shared tasks, select a folder type.
5. To refine the search result, enter additional search terms: To remove a search term, click the **Remove** icon ✕ next to the search term.
6. In order to finish the search, click the **Cancel search** icon ⓧ in the input field.

User interface:


[The search bar \(p. 23\)](#)

Related topics:

[Viewing Tasks \(p. 190\)](#)

8.11 Task Settings

How to use the task settings:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **Tasks** in the side bar.

Depending on the configuration, the following settings are available:

Buttons

- **Subscribing to shared task folders**
See [Subscribing to public and shared task folders \(p. 199\)](#)

Email notifications

Specifies whether you will receive an E-Mail notification, if the following is true:

- **Receive notifications when a task in which you participate is created, modified or deleted**
A task in which you participate has been re-created, changed or deleted.
- **Receive notifications when a participant accepted or declined a task created by you**
A participant accepted or declined a task created by you.
- **Receive notifications when a participant accepted or declined a task in which you participate**
A participant accepted or declined a task in which you participate.


9 Drive

Learn how to work with the Drive application.

- [The Drive Components \(p. 208\)](#)
- [Viewing files \(p. 215\)](#)
- [Downloading Files or Folder Contents \(p. 219\)](#)
- [Driveadd folder \(p. 220\)](#)
- [Uploading Files or Folders \(p. 222\)](#)
- [Creating or Editing Text Files \(p. 223\)](#)
- [Organising Files and Drive Folders \(p. 224\)](#)
- [Searching for Files \(p. 232\)](#)
- [Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)
- [Accessing Files with WebDAV \(p. 233\)](#)
- [Adding storage accounts \(p. 235\)](#)
- [DriveSettings \(p. 236\)](#)

Information on the usage of local apps on desktops and mobile devices can be found in the Drive apps user guide.

How to start the Drive app

Click the **All Applications** icon  in the menu bar. Click on **Drive** in the App Launcher.

Depending on the configuration, you can also click the quick start icon in the menu bar for launching the app. Drive

9.1 The Drive Components

Learn about the components of the Drive app user interface and how to use them:



- [The Drive folder view \(p. 210\)](#)
- [The Drive tool bar \(p. 209\)](#)
- [The Drive navigation bar \(p. 211\)](#)
- [The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)
- [The file details \(p. 213\)](#)
- [The viewer \(p. 214\)](#)

9.1.1 The Drive tool bar

Contains functions for creating, editing and organising files and folders. Notes:

- Some functions are only available if you opened a folder for which you have the appropriate permissions to create or edit objects.
- Some buttons are only displayed, if objects have been selected.

Content

- **New.** Contains the following functions:
 - **Folder.** Creates a new folder.
 - **Text document.** Creates a new text document.
 - **Spreadsheet.** Creates a new spreadsheet.
 - **Presentation.** Creates a new presentation.
 - **Note.** Creates a simple text file.
- **Upload.** Contains the following functions:
 - **File.** Uploads a local file or multiple local files.
 - Depending on the configuration, a function for uploading files in an encrypted format will be available.
 - **Folder.** Uploads a local folder with all contents.
- **Edit.** Edits a text file or an Office document. This function is only available if selecting a text file or an Office document.
- **Share.** This function allows sharing files or folders.
- **View** icon . Shows the contents of the selected file in the Viewer.
- **Download** icon . Downloads the files selected by you. Multiple files are downloaded as a zip archive.
- **Present** icon . Starts a presentation. This function is only available if you select a document in the PowerPoint or PDF format.
- **Delete** icon . Deletes the files or folders selected by you.
- **More actions** icon . Opens a menu with further functions. Notes:
 - If you have selected multiple files, some functions are not available.
 - If displaying a document or a text file, the function **Save as PDF** is available.
- **View.** Allows selecting the view in the display area.

General description of the user interface:

[The tool bar \(p. 24\)](#)

Related topics:

[Driveadd folder \(p. 220\)](#)

[Uploading Files or Folders \(p. 222\)](#)

[Creating or Editing Text Files \(p. 223\)](#)

[Viewing files \(p. 215\)](#)

[Organising Files and Drive Folders \(p. 224\)](#)

[Encrypting or Decrypting Files \(p. 286\)](#)

9.1.2 The Drive folder view

Displays the folders.


In order to display the folder view, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **Folder view**.

Content

- **My files.** Contains your personal files and folders. By default, it contains folders for documents, music, images, and videos.
- **My shares.** Shows the files and folders shared by you for other users or external partners.
- **My attachments.** Displays the file attachments of E-Mail messages sent or received by you.
- **Trash.** Contains the files and folders deleted by you.
- **Shared files.** Contains files shared with you by other users.
If the shared data comes from another groupware installation, the user name will be appended with the name of the other domain.
- **Public files.** Contains files shared with all users.

Depending on the configuration, the content can differ from this information.

Functions

- If clicking on a folder, its contents are displayed.
- The **Actions** icon  next to the selected folder offers functions for organising data and for exchanging data.
You can also use the **context menu**.
- The **Add storage account** button below the folders offers functions for adding cloud storage accounts that you set up in third party products like Dropbox.
- The **Manage Shares** button opens a window in which you can enable or disable your subscription of public and shared folders.
- To adjust the folder view width, hover over the line between the folder view and the display area. Drag the border to the left or to the right.

General description of the user interface:

[The folder view \(p. 25\)](#)

Related topics:

[Viewing files \(p. 215\)](#)

[Driveadd folder \(p. 220\)](#)

[Subscribing to public and shared Drive folders \(p. 221\)](#)

[Adding storage accounts \(p. 235\)](#)

[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

9.1.3 The Drive navigation bar

The navigation path is located below the tool bar. The following functions are available:

- navigate within the folder structure
- sort and select objects

Functions


- Navigation path. It shows the path to the folder opened. To open a parent folder, click on a path entry.
- **Sort by** button. Sorts the files in the display area by various criteria.
- **Select** button. Contains functions for selecting or filtering objects in the display area:
 - select all files and folders, select all files, clear the selection
 - display certain file types only, display all file types

Related topics:

[Viewing files \(p. 215\)](#)

9.1.4 The Drive display area

Displays the files and folders as a list, icons or tiles. In order to select a view, click on **View** in the tool bar.

- For each file and folder a row with the following content is displayed in the **List** view.
 - An icon. There are different icons for the individual object types.
 - The name of the file or folder.
 - Date or time of the last change
 - In the case of files, the size is displayed.
- For each file and folder the following information is displayed in the **Icons** view.
 - An icon. If available, a file preview is shown.
 - the name of the file or folder
- Files and folders are displayed as squares in the **Tiles** view.
- Encrypted files are marked with the **Encrypted** icon .

Functions

- In order to display details of a selected object, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **File details**. Details are displayed in a side bar.
- In order to display specific object types only, click on **Select** in the navigation bar. Enable an entry below **Filter**.
In order to display all objects, click on **Select** in the navigation bar. Enable the entry **All** below **Filter**.
- In order to sort objects, click on **Sort by** in the navigation bar. Enable an entry.
- Select a file or folder by clicking on it. You can also use your system's multi-selection functions. You can also use checkboxes to select files or folders. In order to display the checkboxes, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **Checkboxes**.
To select all objects or files or to clear the selection, click on **Select** in the navigation bar. Click on an entry below **Select**.
- If double-clicking on a folder, it will be opened.
- For frequently used functions, you can use the **context menu** for a folder, a file or multiple files.

General description of the user interface:

[The display area \(p. 26\)](#)

Related topics:

[The file details \(p. 213\)](#)

[Viewing files \(p. 215\)](#)

[Downloading Files or Folder Contents \(p. 219\)](#)

[Organising Files and Drive Folders \(p. 224\)](#)

[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)



[Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)

9.1.5 The file details

Displays information about the selected object in a side bar.

In order to display the side bar, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **File details**.

Content

- **Details.** Displays general information about the object selected in the display area:
 - the name of the file or folder
 - file size or number of objects in the folder
 - date of the last change
 - the editor's name
 - the parent folder's name
 - Some of the following data are displayed for pictures with Exif data: make, model, shot, ISO, capture dateIf you shared the object, the button next to **Shares** can be used to open the window for editing shares.
When having selected an object in the **My attachments** folder, the **View message** button is displayed. When clicking on it, the respective E-Mail with the attachment is displayed.
- **Description.** Shows file comments, if available.
To view the buttons for creating or editing a description, click the **Panel on/off** icon .
- If there are several file versions, the **Versions** area is displayed. To view the list of versions, click the **Panel on/off** icon 
For each version the following information is displayed:
 - The version's file name. If clicking on it, a menu with several functions opens:
 - the version's file size
 - name of the user who uploaded the version
 - date and time of the version's upload
- **Upload a new version** button. Click on this button to select a file that is uploaded as new version.

Related topics:

[The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)

[The viewer \(p. 214\)](#)

[Viewing files \(p. 215\)](#)


[Displaying files in the viewer \(p. 216\)](#)

[Working with versions \(p. 231\)](#)









9.1.6 The viewer

Shows the contents of files.

In order to launch the viewer, do one of the following:

- Select a file. Click the **View** icon  in the tool bar.
- Double-click on a file in the display area.
Note: If double-clicking on an Office document, the respective Documents app is launched if configured accordingly.
- Select at least one file. Click on **View** in the context menu.

Content

- Name of the selected file. If clicking on the name, the *Rename* window opens.
- Depending on the selected file type, the respective functions are displayed.
 - If the selected file is editable, the **Edit** button is displayed.
 - If a document template is shown, the **New from template** button is displayed.
 - Depending on the content of the selected file, the **Zoom out** icon  and the **Zoom in** icon  are displayed.
 - If an image is shown and there are further images in the selected folder, the **Slideshow** button is displayed.
 - If a presentation or a PDF document is shown, the **Present** icon  is displayed.
- **Download** icon . Downloads the file.
- **Share**. This function allows sharing data.
- **More actions** icon . Opens a menu with further functions. If displaying a document or a text file, the function **Print as PDF** is available. If there are several images, the **Run auto-play mode** function is available.
- **View details** icon . Opens or closes a side bar with file details.
- **Pop out standalone viewer** icon . Displays the contents of the selected file in a new browser tab. If the side bar is displayed, you can use thumbnails to navigate through text documents, presentations and PDF documents.
- **Close** icon . Closes the Viewer.
- If there are additional files, icons for browsing are displayed to the left and to the right of the view.

Related topics:

[The file details \(p. 213\)](#)

[Displaying files in the viewer \(p. 216\)](#)

[Holding a presentation \(p. 217\)](#)

[Organising Files and Drive Folders \(p. 224\)](#)

[Downloading Files or Folder Contents \(p. 219\)](#)

[Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)

9.2 Viewing files

Learn how to display various files, documents or pictures in different ways:

- [Displaying files in the viewer \(p. 216\)](#)
- [Displaying E-Mail attachments in Drive \(p. 217\)](#)
- [Holding a presentation \(p. 217\)](#)

User interface:

- [The Drive folder view \(p. 210\)](#)
- [The Drive tool bar \(p. 209\)](#)
- [The Drive navigation bar \(p. 211\)](#)
- [The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)
- [The file details \(p. 213\)](#)

9.2.1 Displaying files in the viewer

The following options are available:

- display text files, documents or images in the viewer
- view images as a slide show
- play audio and video files, provided they are in a suitable format

How to display files in the viewer:


1. Open a folder containing files.
2. In order to select a view for the objects, click on **View** in the tool bar. Select one of these entries: **List, Icons, Tiles**.

In order to display details of a selected file, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **File details**.

3. To change the sorting, click on **Sort by** in the navigation bar.

In order to display specific object types only, click on **Select** in the navigation bar.


4. Use one of the following methods:

- Double-click on a file in the display area.
- Select one or several files in the display area. Click the **View** icon  in the tool bar.
- Select **View** from the context menu.

To display details for the selected file, enable the **Show details** icon .

In order to open the previous or next file, click the **Back** icon  or the **Next** icon  next to the view.

Depending on the file type, different functions can be available:

- If the file content cannot be displayed, a button for downloading the file will be shown.
- For text files and documents in the Office format, there are editing functions available: Information on editing documents can be found in the Documents user documentation.
- For images, a button for running a slideshow is available.
- For presentations, an icon for presenting the presentation is shown.
- For audio and video files in suitable formats, there are playing functions available.
Note: The playing options depend on the browser used.
- In order to display the file in a browser tab, click the **Pop out standalone viewer** icon .
You can use thumbnails to navigate through text documents, presentations and PDF documents.
To do so, enable the **Thumbnails** tab in the side bar. Click on a thumbnail image.

User interface:

[The viewer \(p. 214\)](#)

[The file details \(p. 213\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying E-Mail attachments in Drive \(p. 217\)](#)

[Holding a presentation \(p. 217\)](#)

[Downloading Files or Folder Contents \(p. 219\)](#)

[Searching for Files \(p. 232\)](#)

[Navigating within the folder structure \(p. 241\)](#)

9.2.2 Displaying E-Mail attachments in Drive

The attachments of E-Mail messages that have been sent or received by you, are displayed in a separate folder.

How to display E-Mail attachments:

1. In the Drive app, open the **My shares** folder.
2. To view an attachment's content, use the methods for viewing files.
To display the E-Mail that belongs to the selected attachment, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **File details**. Click on **View message**.

User interface:

- [The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)
- [The file details \(p. 213\)](#)
- [The E-Mail folder view \(p. 58\)](#)

Related topics:


- [Displaying files in the viewer \(p. 216\)](#)
- [Holding a presentation \(p. 217\)](#)
- [Downloading Files or Folder Contents \(p. 219\)](#)
- [Viewing or Saving email Attachments \(p. 65\)](#)

9.2.3 Holding a presentation


You can hold presentations in common Office formats or in the PDF format. Depending on the requirement, use one of the following methods:

- Locally hold a presentation on the machine.
- Hold a remote presentation. This enables users who are not on-site, to follow the presentation.




How to hold a local presentation:

1. Open a folder containing presentations.
2. Select a presentation in the display area. Click the **Present** icon  in the tool bar.
You can also use the **Present** icon in the Viewer.
The presentation is opened in a new page. To browse the pages before the start, use the navigation elements next to the sheet or the previews below the sheet. You can also use the cursor keys.
You can use the icons on the right side of the tool bar to adjust the sheet size.
3. In order to start a local presentation, click on **Start presentation** in the tool bar. Select **Start local presentation**.

During the presentation, the following functions are available:

- To display a function bar, hover the mouse over the bottom of the screen. The following functions are available:
 - browse, display a specific sheet, display the participants list, pause presentation, activate full screen mode.
 - If clicking on **Pause presentation**, the presentation is stopped at the current sheet.
 - If clicking the icon **Toggle fullscreen**  , the fullscreen mode is activated You can use the [esc] key or the function bar at the bottom of the screen to leave the fullscreen mode.
4. In order to end the presentation, click on **End presentation** in the tool bar.

How to hold a remote presentation:

1. Open a folder containing presentations.
2. Select a presentation in the display area. Click the **Present** icon  in the tool bar.
You can also use the **Present** icon in the Viewer.
The presentation is opened in a new page. To browse the pages before the start, use the navigation elements next to the sheet or the previews below the sheet. You can also use the cursor keys.
You can use the icons on the right side of the tool bar to adjust the sheet size.
3. Send the URL of the selected presentation to the users who should take part in the presentation. The users have to open the URL in their browser.
If clicking the **Show participants** icon  the users who take part in the remote presentation are shown in the side bar.
4. Click on **Start presentation** in the tool bar. Select **Start remote presentation**.
During the presentation, the following functions are available:
 - To display a function bar, hover the mouse over the bottom of the screen. The following functions are available:
 - browse, display a specific sheet, display the participants list, pause presentation, activate full screen mode.
 - If clicking on **Pause presentation**, the presentation is stopped at the current sheet.
 - If clicking the icon **Toggle fullscreen**  , the fullscreen mode is activated. You can use the [esc] key or the function bar at the bottom of the screen to leave the fullscreen mode.
5. In order to end the presentation, click on **End presentation** in the tool bar.

User interface:

- [The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)
- [The file details \(p. 213\)](#)
- [The viewer \(p. 214\)](#)

Related topics:


- [Displaying files in the viewer \(p. 216\)](#)
- [Displaying E-Mail attachments in Drive \(p. 217\)](#)
- [Downloading Files or Folder Contents \(p. 219\)](#)

9.3 Downloading Files or Folder Contents

The following options are available:


- download one or several files
- download the complete contents of a folder as zip archive

How to download files:

1. Open a folder containing files.
Select one or several files in the display area.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click the **Download** icon  in the tool bar.
 - Select **Download** from the context menu.
 - Use the **Download** button in the Viewer.
3. Complete the steps for downloading the folder.

Tip: Learn how to download a certain file version by reading [Section 9.7.11, "Working with versions"](#).

How to download the complete contents of a folder:

1. In the folder view, select the folder with the content you want to download.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Download entire folder**.
3. Complete the steps for downloading the folder. The folder's content is saved as a zip archive.

You can also download a folder by using the context menu in the display area.

Note: Depending on the configuration, attachments will be checked for viruses before being downloaded.

- If no virus is found, the attachments will be downloaded without any further notification.
- If a virus scan was not possible or a virus was found, a window with a respective warning opens. In this case you can cancel the download.

User interface:

[The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)

[The viewer \(p. 214\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying files in the viewer \(p. 216\)](#)

[Displaying E-Mail attachments in Drive \(p. 217\)](#)

[Holding a presentation \(p. 217\)](#)

9.4 Driveadd folder

Learn how to create personal Drive folders and how to set the view for shared Drive folders:

- [Drive: Creating Folders \(p. 221\)](#)
- [Subscribing to public and shared Drive folders \(p. 221\)](#)

User interface:

[The Drive folder view \(p. 210\)](#)

[The Drive tool bar \(p. 209\)](#)

Related topics:

[Organising Files and Drive Folders \(p. 224\)](#)


[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

[Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)

9.4.1 Drive: Creating Folders

You can create new folders in the current folder.

How to create a new folder:

1. Select **My files** or another folder in the folder view.
Note: Open a folder for which you have the appropriate permissions to create objects.
2. Click on **New** in the tool bar. Click on **Folder**.
You can also click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name in the folder view. Click on **Add new folder**.
3. Enter a name in the *Add new folder* window. Click on **Add**.

Related topics:

- [Uploading Files or Folders \(p. 222\)](#)
- [Creating or Editing Text Files \(p. 223\)](#)
- [Organising Files and Drive Folders \(p. 224\)](#)
- [Searching for Files \(p. 232\)](#)
- [Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

9.4.2 Subscribing to public and shared Drive folders

You can define which public and shared Drive folders are displayed in the folder view by subscribing to such folders.

How to define the Drive folders you want to subscribe to:

1. In the folder view, click on **Manage Shares**.
A window opens. It shows the public and shared Drive folders.
2. If you want a folder to be displayed, enable the **Subscribe to folder** button .
If you no longer want a folder to be displayed and synchronised, disable the **Subscribe to folder** button.

Related topics:

- [Accessing other users' shares \(p. 253\)](#)
- [Downloading Personal Data \(p. 261\)](#)

9.5 Uploading Files or Folders

You can upload local files or folders to the current Drive folder.

How to upload files:

1. Open a Drive folder.

Note: Open a folder for which you have the appropriate permissions to create objects.

2. Click on **Upload** in the tool bar. Click on **File**.

3. Select a local file or multiple local files in the *Upload file* window.

Click on **Open**. The current progress status will be shown in the display area.

In the [Settings](#), you can define whether a new file or a new version of a possibly existing file with the same name should be created.

How to upload a folder:

1. Open a Drive folder.

Note: Open a folder for which you have the appropriate permissions to create objects.

2. Click on **Upload** in the tool bar. Click on **Folder**.

3. Select a local folder in the *Select folder for upload* window.

Click on **Upload**. The current progress status will be shown in the display area.

Note: If there is already a Drive folder with this name, the name of the newly uploaded folder gets a consecutive number.

Tips:

- In order to cancel the process, click on **Cancel** at the bottom right side of the display area. In order to cancel the process for specific objects, click on **Details** at the bottom right side of the display area. Click on **Cancel** next to a object name in the *Upload progress* window.
- You can continue working in the groupware during the upload process.
- You can also upload objects by dragging them from a file browser or from the desktop to the Drive app window and drop them in the display area.
- Depending on the configuration, there are functions available for uploading objects in an encrypted format.

User interface:

[The Drive folder view \(p. 210\)](#)

[The Drive tool bar \(p. 209\)](#)

[The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)

[The file details \(p. 213\)](#)

Related topics:

[Drive: Creating Folders \(p. 221\)](#)

[Creating or Editing Text Files \(p. 223\)](#)

[Organising Files and Drive Folders \(p. 224\)](#)

[Searching for Files \(p. 232\)](#)

[Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

[Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)

[Uploading files securely by using encryption \(p. 287\)](#)

9.6 Creating or Editing Text Files

The following options are available:

- create text files with plain text
- edit existing text files

How to create a new text file:

1. Open a folder in the folder view.
Note: Open a folder for which you have the appropriate permissions to create objects.
2. Click on **New** in the tool bar. Click on **Note**.
3. Enter a title.
Enter the text or paste text from the clipboard.
In order to edit the text, use common techniques from familiar applications.

How to edit a text file:

1. Open a folder containing text files, in the folder view.
Note: Open a folder for which you have the permission to create objects.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - Select a text file. Click on **Edit** in the tool bar.
 - Double-click on a text file.
 - Display a text file in the Viewer. Click on **Edit**.
The text will be opened for editing.
3. In order to edit the text, use common techniques from familiar applications.

User interface:

- [The Drive tool bar \(p. 209\)](#)
- [The editing window \(p. 29\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Drive: Creating Folders \(p. 221\)](#)
- [Organising Files and Drive Folders \(p. 224\)](#)
- [Searching for Files \(p. 232\)](#)
- [Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)
- [Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)

9.7 Organising Files and Drive Folders

Learn what you can do with files and Drive folders:

- [Sending files as E-Mail attachments \(p. 225\)](#)
- [Editing file names \(p. 225\)](#)
- [Creating or editing descriptions \(p. 226\)](#)
- [Moving files or Drive folders \(p. 226\)](#)
- [Copying files \(p. 227\)](#)
- [Saving files as PDF \(p. 227\)](#)
- [Adding files to the Portal \(p. 228\)](#)
- [Adding files or Drive folders to Favourites \(p. 228\)](#)
- [Deleting files or Drive folders \(p. 229\)](#)
- [Locking or unlocking files \(p. 230\)](#)
- [Working with versions \(p. 231\)](#)

User interface:

- [The Drive tool bar \(p. 209\)](#)
- [The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)
- [The viewer \(p. 214\)](#)



Related topics:

- [Driveadd folder \(p. 220\)](#)
- [Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)

9.7.1 Sending files as E-Mail attachments

You can send the current versions of files as E-Mail attachments.

How to send files as an E-Mail attachment:

1. Select one or several files in the display area.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Send by e-mail**.
 - Click on **Send by e-mail** in the context menu.
 - Use the **More actions** icon  in the Viewer.
3. In the E-Mail edit window, fill in the details to send a new E-Mail.

User interface:



[The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)

[The viewer \(p. 214\)](#)

9.7.2 Editing file names

Prerequisite: You have the appropriate permissions for editing objects in the folder containing the file.

How to edit the file name:

1. Select a file in the display area.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Rename**.
 - Select **Rename** from the context menu.
 - Use the **More actions** icon  in the Viewer.
 - Click on the file name on the upper left side of the Viewer.
3. Edit the file name in the *Rename* window.

User interface:

[The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)

[The file details \(p. 213\)](#)

[The viewer \(p. 214\)](#)

Related topics:

[Creating or editing descriptions \(p. 226\)](#)

9.7.3 Creating or editing descriptions

You can create or edit a file's description.

Prerequisite: You have the appropriate permissions for editing objects in the folder containing the file.

How to create or edit a file's description:

1. Select a file in the display area.
If no details are displayed, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **File details**.
2. To view the buttons, click the **Panel on/off** icon on the right side of the input field.
In order to add a description, click on **Add a description**.
In order to edit a description, click on **Edit description**.

You can also use the function in the side bar of the Viewer.

User interface:

- [The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)
- [The file details \(p. 213\)](#)
- [The viewer \(p. 214\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Editing file names \(p. 225\)](#)


9.7.4 Moving files or Drive folders

You can move the following objects to another folder:

- one or multiple files
- one or multiple folders
- a combination of files and folders

Prerequisite: You need to have the appropriate permissions to create objects in the target folder.

How to move objects to another folder:

1. Select the objects in the display area.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Move**.
 - Select **Move** from the context menu.
 - Use drag and drop to move the items to a folder in the folder view.
3. Select a folder in the *Move* window. You can create a new folder by clicking on **Create folder**.
Click on **Move**.

User interface:

- [The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)

Related topics:


- [Copying files \(p. 227\)](#)

9.7.5 Copying files

You can copy files to another folder: When copying a shared file, the permissions will not be copied. This means, the file's copy is not shared.

Prerequisite: You need to have the appropriate permissions to create objects in the target folder.

How to copy files to another folder:

1. Select one or several files in the display area.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Copy**.
 - Select **Copy** from the context menu.
3. Select a folder in the *Copy* window. You can create a new folder by clicking on **Create folder**. Click on **Copy**.

User interface:

[The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)



Related topics:

[Moving files or Drive folders \(p. 226\)](#)

9.7.6 Saving files as PDF

You can save documents and text files in PDF format. The PDF file will be saved to the folder that contains the document or text file.

How to save a file in the PDF format:

1. Select a file in the display area.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Save as PDF**.
 - Select **Save as PDF** from the context menu.
 - Use the **More actions** icon  in the Viewer.
3. In the *Save as PDF* window, you can enter a name for the PDF file. Click on **Save**.

User interface:

[The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)

[The viewer \(p. 214\)](#)

9.7.7 Adding files to the Portal

You can add a file as widget to the Portal.

How to add a file to the portal:

Select a file in the display area. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Add to portal**.

User interface:

[The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)

Related topics:

[Adding Portal widgets \(p. 52\)](#)


9.7.8 Adding files or Drive folders to Favourites

You can add frequently used objects like files or folders to the symbolic **Favourites** folder. The following functions are available:

- add objects to favourites
- remove objects from favourites

The original position of the objects in the folder view will not be affected by these actions.

How to add objects to Favourites:

1. Select the objects in the display area.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Add to favorites**.
 - Select **Add to favourites** from the context menu.

Result: The objects are displayed in the upper part of the folder view below **Favourites**.

How to remove objects from Favourites:

1. In the folder view, click on **Favourites**. Select the objects in the display area.
2. Click on **Remove from favourites** in the tool bar.

Result: The objects will be removed from Favourites. If Favourites is empty, the folder will be removed.

User interface:

[The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)

Related topics:

[Moving files or Drive folders \(p. 226\)](#)

9.7.9 Deleting files or Drive folders


You can delete objects in the same way as files and folders. The following options are available:

- Delete objects. The objects are moved to the **Trash** folder.
- Restore deleted objects from the **Trash** folder. The objects are restored in their original location.
- Permanently delete objects from the **Trash** folder. You can also permanently delete all items in a folder by emptying the trash.

Note: Depending on the configuration, some folders cannot be deleted.


Warning: If you delete objects from the **Trash** folder, they are permanently deleted.

How to delete objects:

1. Select the objects in the display area.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click the **Delete** icon  in the tool bar.
 - Select **Delete** from the context menu.
3. Confirm that you want to delete the items.

Result: The selected objects are deleted.


How to restore deleted objects:

1. Open the **Trash** folder.
2. Select the objects to be restored.
3. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Restore**.
 - Select **Restore** from the context menu.

Result: The objects are restored in their original location.

How to permanently delete objects:


Warning: Permanently deleted objects **cannot** be restored.

1. Open the **Trash** folder.
2. Select the objects.
3. Click the **Permanently delete** icon  in the tool bar.
4. Confirm that you want to delete the items.

Result: The items are permanently deleted.

How to permanently delete the contents of the Trash folder:

Warning: Permanently deleted objects **cannot** be restored.

1. Select the **Trash** folder in the folder view.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Empty folder**.
3. Confirm that you want to empty the folder.


Result: The objects in the trash are permanently deleted.

9.7.10 Locking or unlocking files


When editing a file, you can lock the file. The lock has the following purposes:

- The file lock informs other users that the file is currently being edited and might no longer be up to date.
- If the file is located in a folder that you share with other users whom you granted edit permissions, those users can not edit the locked file.
- If you are the owner of a shared file and another user locks the file, you can always unlock it.

How to lock files:

1. Select one or several files in the display area.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Lock**.

How to unlock files:


1. Select one or several locked files in the display area.
2. Click the **More actions** icon  in the tool bar. Click on **Unlock**.

9.7.11 Working with versions

The following options are available:

- open or save the current version
- upload a new version
- apply functions to a specific version:
 - download
 - set as current version
 - delete the version
 - delete all previous versions

How to open or save the current version:

1. Select a file in the display area. Click the **Download** icon  in the tool bar.
2. Complete the steps for opening or downloading.


How to upload a new version:

1. Select a file in the display area. If no side bar is displayed, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **File details**.
2. Click on **Upload new version** in the side bar. Select a file.
3. Enter a version comment.
4. Click on **Upload**.

You can also use the function in the side bar of the Viewer.

Tip: You can also upload a new version by dragging a file from a file browser or from the desktop to the viewer's or the display area's side bar and dropping it there.

How to download or delete a specific version or make it the current version:

1. Select a file in the display area. If no side bar is displayed, click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable **File details**.
2. To view a versions list, click the **Panel on/off** icon  next to **Versions** in the side bar. Click on a version. Select one of the functions from the menu:
 - **Download**. Downloads the version.
 - **Make this the current version**. Sets this version as the current version.
 - **Delete version**. Deletes this version only.
 - **Delete all previous versions**. Deletes all versions that are older than this version.

You can also use the function in the side bar of the Viewer.

User interface:

[The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)

[The file details \(p. 213\)](#)

[The viewer \(p. 214\)](#)

Related topics:

[Downloading Files or Folder Contents \(p. 219\)](#)

9.8 Searching for Files

In order to search for files, you can use the following search criteria:

- search terms for file names, file descriptions
- folders that are to be searched
- file type: all, audio, documents, images, other, video
- file size
- time frame of the latest change, related to the current date: last week, last month, last year
- folder type: all, private, public, shared

How to search for files:

1. Click on the **Search** input field. Enter a search term in the input field.
The search menu opens.
2. Define the data sources to be searched by clicking on an entry in the search menu.
 - If clicking on the search term or pressing enter, the following data sources are searched: file name, description
 - In order to only search in the file names, click on **in file name** in the search menu. Accordingly, you can limit the search to the file description.
The search results are displayed in the list that is shown in the display area.
3. To select a folder for the search, click on the folder name next to the input field.
 - If you select **All folders**, all private, public, and shared folders and sub-folders are searched. To limit the search to private, public or shared folders, click on **Options**. Select a folder type.
 - If you select a specific folder or the folder, only this folder is searched, but not sub-folders.
4. To limit the search to specific files, click on **Options** ▼ next to the input field. Use the following methods:
 - To search for specific file types, select a file type.
 - To search for files with a specific size, select a file size.
 - To search for files that have been modified within a specific time frame, select a date.
 - To limit the search to files in private, public or shared folders, select a folder type.
5. To refine the search result, enter additional search terms: To remove a search term, click the **Remove** icon ✕ next to the search term.
6. In order to finish the search, click the **Cancel search** icon ⓧ in the input field.

User interface:

[The search bar \(p. 23\)](#)

Related topics:

[Displaying files in the viewer \(p. 216\)](#)

9.9 Accessing Files with WebDAV

With WebDAV you can access the Drive app files in the same way as when accessing local files on your disk. Compared with the access from the Groupware GUI, WebDAV has advantages and disadvantages:

- The advantage is the quick and direct access with a file browser e.g. the Windows Explorer. You need not be logged in to the Groupware GUI.
- The disadvantage is that you can only see the current document version. Neither the version history nor additional information, like comments, are displayed.
- **Warning:** If you delete a file with WebDAV, all versions will be lost, not only the current version.

Note: To create objects with WebDAV in a public or shared folder, you need to have at least the following permissions for the respective folder:

create objects, edit own objects.

To also read own objects, you additionally need this permission:

read own objects

Prior to accessing the Drive app files with a file browser, e.g. the Windows Explorer, you have to set up the WebDAV access. Depending on the system software the procedure differs:

- [Setting up WebDAV under Linux \(p. 234\)](#)
- [Setting up WebDAV under Windows \(p. 234\)](#)

9.9.1 Setting up WebDAV under Linux

How to set up WebDAV access under Linux:

1. Open KDE Konqueror or a similar browser.
 2. Enter the following address in the address bar.
webdav://<address>/servlet/webdav.infostore
Replace <address> with the groupware server's IP address or URL.
 3. Enter your username and your password for the Groupware Server.
- Result: The Drive app files are displayed in the browser.

9.9.2 Setting up WebDAV under Windows

How to set up WebDAV access under Windows:

1. In the navigation area of the Windows Explorer select the entry **This PC**.
Click on the **Computer** tab at the top. Click on **Add network address**. The *Add network address* window opens. Click on **Next**.
 2. Select **Select custom network address**. Click on **Next**.
 3. Enter the following address in the **Internet or network address** input field.
webdav://<address>/servlet/webdav.infostore
Replace <address> with the groupware server's IP address or URL. Click on **Next**.
 4. Enter your username and your password for the Groupware Server. Click on **OK**.
 5. On the next page you can assign a name to the network address. Click on **Next**.
 6. Click on **Finish**.
- Result: Below **This PC** you can access your Drive app files.

9.10 Adding storage accounts


If you use third party cloud storage like Google Drive, Dropbox, Box or OneDrive, you can add those storage accounts to the groupware. This allows you to access those accounts' data from within the groupware.

How to add a storage account:

1. In the folder view, click on **Add storage account**. The *Add storage account* window opens.
2. Click an icon. The next steps depends on the cloud storage service provider:
 - If the provider asks for credentials, enter your credentials for the cloud storage account.
 - If the provider asks you for permission to access the data, grant this permission.

A folder for the storage account appears in the folder view.

Options:

- To rename the folder, click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name or use the context menu.
- Depending on the folder content, you can use the tool bar functions, e.g. to view pictures or to copy files.

Note: Depending on the storage account's functionality, working with versions might not be supported.

User interface:

[The Drive folder view \(p. 210\)](#)

[Viewing, editing, deleting accounts \(p. 260\)](#)


Related topics:

[Renaming folders \(p. 243\)](#)

[Viewing, editing, deleting accounts \(p. 260\)](#)

9.11 DriveSettings

How to use the Drive settings:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **Drive** in the side bar.

Depending on the configuration, the following settings are available:

Adding files with identical names

Defines whether a new file or a new version of a possibly existing file with the same name should be created.

- **Add new version**
A new version of the file will be created.
- **Add new version and show notification**
A new version of the file will be created. As soon as the process is finished, you will receive a notification.
- **Add separate file**
A new file will be added. The file name is enhanced with a consecutive number.

Slideshow / Autoplay mode for images

Defines how to present pictures that are displayed in the viewer

Advanced settings

- **Show hidden files and folders**
Defines whether hidden files and folders are displayed. The names of hidden files and folders are preceded by a dot. The local Drive apps require such files and folders for internal purposes. In order to not endanger the functionality of the local Drive apps, such hidden files and folders must not be changed or deleted.

Version history

Depending on the configuration, you can define the number of file versions that should be kept for a specific time frame set by you. If the maximum time frame or number is reached, older versions are deleted upon creation of a new version.

- **Time frame**
Defines the period after which an older version is deleted when creating a new version.
- **File version limit**
Defines the maximum number of versions. If the maximum is reached, an older version is deleted when creating a new version.

10 Data Organisation and Shares

Learn how to organise your data and how to share your data with others.

- [Managing Data with Folders \(p. 238\)](#)
- [Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)
- [Managing Accounts \(p. 258\)](#)
- [Downloading Personal Data \(p. 261\)](#)

Information on encrypting E-Mail messages and files can be found in [Encrypting Data with Guard \(p. 277\)](#)

10.1 Managing Data with Folders

Folders help you to:

- keep an overview of your objects
- share information with other users and external partners
- search for certain information and quickly find the information again

What you should know:

- [What are folder types? \(p. 239\)](#)
- [What is the purpose of permissions? \(p. 240\)](#)

The following options are available:

- [Navigating within the folder structure \(p. 241\)](#)
- [Hiding folders \(p. 242\)](#)
- [Adding folders to favourites \(p. 243\)](#)
- [Renaming folders \(p. 243\)](#)
- [Moving folders \(p. 244\)](#)
- [Deleting folders \(p. 244\)](#)

Additional information on files and folders in the Drive app can be found in [Organising Files and Drive Folders \(p. 224\)](#).

User interface:

- [The E-Mail folder view \(p. 58\)](#)
- [The Address Book folder view \(p. 104\)](#)
- [The Calendar folder view \(p. 137\)](#)
- [The Tasks folder view \(p. 186\)](#)
- [The Drive folder view \(p. 210\)](#)
- [The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)

Related topics:

- [Adding E-Mail Folders \(p. 77\)](#)
- [Adding Address Books \(p. 120\)](#)
- [Adding Calendars \(p. 165\)](#)
- [Adding Task Folders \(p. 198\)](#)
- [Driveadd folder \(p. 220\)](#)

10.1.1 What are folder types?

The folder type defines the folder access for the users. The following folder types exist in the folder view:

- Personal folders
 - Personal folders contain your E-Mail messages, contacts, appointments, tasks, and files. Other users cannot view your personal folders, unless you share them.
 - Your personal folders for contacts, appointments, tasks, and files can be found below **My address books, My calenders, My tasks, My files** in the respective app.

Depending on the configuration, the following folder types are available in addition:

- Public folders
 - Public folders contain contacts, appointments, and documents that are of common interest to all users. Each user can create public folders and share them with other users.
 - The public folders for contacts, appointments, tasks, and files can be found below **Public address books, Public calenders, Public tasks, Public files** in the respective app.
- Shared folders
 - Shared folders have been shared with you by other users with read or write access.
 - The shared folders for contacts, appointments, tasks, and files can be found below **Shared address books, Shared calenders, Shared tasks, Shared files** in the respective app.

Related topics:

[What is the purpose of permissions? \(p. 240\)](#)

10.1.2 What is the purpose of permissions?

Permissions define what an internal user or external partner is allowed to do with a particular folder and its contents.

- As an internal user you have preset permissions for existing folders.
When creating a new folder, you will be granted the preset permissions.
- When inviting other people to a shared item, you grant them specific permissions.
Note: Depending on the configuration, you might not be able to grant permissions to other persons.

You have the following permissions for folders that already exist:

- You are the owner of your personal folders.
The owner has the same permissions as an administrator. The owner has all permissions for this folder. The owner can grant other users permissions to the folder.
- You are allowed to create folders and objects in public folders.
- You are allowed to view folders and read objects in the Global Address book.

Depending on where you create a new folder, particular rights are assigned to you.

- If you create a new folder in a personal folder:
 - You are the owner.
 - In the E-Mail app and the Drive app, other users inherit their permissions for the parent folder. In the other apps, other users do not inherit permissions.
- If you create a new folder in the **Public files** folder:
 - You are the owner.
 - Other users will get no rights. You have to set the permissions for the new folder. If you then create new subfolders in this folder, the permissions for this folder are inherited by the new subfolders.
- If you create a new folder in the shared folder of another user:
 - The user who shared the folder is the administrator of the new folder.
 - You are the author of the new folder.
An author is allowed to change or delete existing objects, to create and edit new objects, and to create subfolders.
 - Other users will get the same rights as for the parent folder.
Note: You need to have the permission to create objects in the shared folder.

Related topics:

[What are folder types? \(p. 239\)](#)

[Which permissions can be used? \(p. 254\)](#)

[Use cases for permissions \(p. 256\)](#)

[Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)

10.1.3 Navigating within the folder structure

The following functions are available:

- open or close the folder view
- change the folder view width
- open or select a folder in the folder view or by using the navigation path

How to open or close the folder view:

Use one of the following methods:

- Click on **View** in the tool bar. Enable or disable **Folder view**.
- Below the folder view, click the **Open folder view** icon **»** or the **Close folder view** icon **«**.

How to change the folder view width:

1. Move the cursor to the right border of the folder view. A double arrow will be displayed.
2. Drag the border to the left or to the right.

How to open or select a folder:

1. If the folder view is closed, open it.
2. A folder in the E-Mail and Drive app can have subfolders. To view subfolders, click on the triangle button next to the folder name.
You can also open or close a folder by double-clicking on it.
3. Click on a folder. The folder's items are displayed in the detail view.
In the Drive app, additionally the following options are available:
 - Click on an entry in the navigation bar to open a parent folder.
 - To open a folder, double-click on it in the detail view.

Super-ordinate actions:

[Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)

[Working with tabs \(p. 79\)](#)

[Displaying contacts \(p. 109\)](#)

[Displaying appointments in the calendar view \(p. 145\)](#)

[Displaying appointments in the list view \(p. 148\)](#)

[Viewing Tasks \(p. 190\)](#)

[Viewing files \(p. 215\)](#)

[Displaying files in the viewer \(p. 216\)](#)

Related topics:

[Hiding folders \(p. 242\)](#)

[Adding folders to favourites \(p. 243\)](#)


10.1.4 Hiding folders

In the Address Book, Calendar or Tasks apps, you can hide certain personal, shared or public folders. The following functions are available:

- hide single folders
- display hidden folders again


Each hidden folder is displayed in a collective folder at the bottom of the folder view.

How to hide a folder:

1. In the Address Book, Calendar or Tasks app, select the folder you want to hide, in the folder view.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Hide**.

Note: If you select a folder that cannot be hidden, this function is not displayed.

How to display a hidden folder again:

1. In the Address Book, Calendar or Tasks app, respectively select one of the entries **Hidden address books**, **Hidden calendars** or **Hidden tasks**. The hidden folders will be displayed.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to a folder name. Click on **Show**.

Related topics:

[Navigating within the folder structure \(p. 241\)](#)

[Adding folders to favourites \(p. 243\)](#)


10.1.5 Adding folders to favourites

You can add frequently used folders to the symbolic folder **Favourites**. The following functions are available:

- add folders to favourites
- remove folders from favourites


The original position of the objects in the folder view will not be affected by these actions.

How to add a folder to Favourites:

1. Select a folder in the folder view.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Add to favourites**.

Result: The folder is displayed in the upper part of the folder view below Favourites. If Favourites does not exist already, it will be created automatically.

How to remove a folder from Favourites:

1. Select a folder in the folder view below **Favourites**.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Remove from favourites**.
You can also activate this function by right-clicking on the folder in its original position in the folder view.

Result: The folder will be removed from **Favourites**. If **Favorites** is empty, the folder will be removed.


Related topics:

- [Navigating within the folder structure \(p. 241\)](#)
- [Hiding folders \(p. 242\)](#)

10.1.6 Renaming folders

You can rename sub-folders in your personal folders. For other folders you need administrator permissions.

How to rename a folder:

1. In the folder view, select the folder that you want to rename.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Rename**.
3. Edit the name or enter a new name. Click on **Rename**.


Related topics:

- [Navigating within the folder structure \(p. 241\)](#)
- [Moving folders \(p. 244\)](#)
- [Deleting folders \(p. 244\)](#)
- [Adding storage accounts \(p. 235\)](#)

10.1.7 Moving folders

You can move sub-folders from your personal folders. For other folders you need the appropriate permissions. For the target folder you need the permission to create sub-folders.

How to move a folder:

1. In the folder view, select the folder that you want to move.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Move**.
3. Select a folder in the *Move folder* window. You can create a new folder by clicking on **Create folder**.
4. Click on **Move**.

Related topics:

[Navigating within the folder structure \(p. 241\)](#)

[Renaming folders \(p. 243\)](#)


[Deleting folders \(p. 244\)](#)

10.1.8 Deleting folders

You can delete sub-folders in your personal folders. For other folders you need the appropriate permissions.

Warning: If you delete a folder, all subfolders and objects in this folder will also be deleted. Deleted subfolders and objects cannot be restored.

How to delete a folder:

1. In the folder view, select the folder that you want to delete.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click the **Delete** button.
3. Confirm that you want to delete the folder.

Result: The folder and its objects are permanently deleted.

Related topics:

[Navigating within the folder structure \(p. 241\)](#)

[Renaming folders \(p. 243\)](#)

[Moving folders \(p. 244\)](#)

10.2 Sharing Data

You can co-operate with internal users or external partners by sharing the following data with read or edit permissions:

- E-Mail folders, address books, calendars, task folders
The global address book cannot be shared.
- Drive-folders, files

The following options are available:

- [Sharing data \(p. 246\)](#)
- [Editing shares \(p. 247\)](#)
- [Resending an invitation \(p. 249\)](#)
- [Removing shares \(p. 250\)](#)
- [Viewing or editing shares in the Drive app \(p. 251\)](#)
- [Subscribing to shared or personal E-Mail folders \(p. 252\)](#)
- [Accessing other users' shares \(p. 253\)](#)

Information about permissions that can be used when sharing, can be found here:

- [Which permissions can be used? \(p. 254\)](#)
- [Use cases for permissions \(p. 256\)](#)

User interface:

- [The E-Mail folder view \(p. 58\)](#)
- [The Address Book folder view \(p. 104\)](#)
- [The Calendar folder view \(p. 137\)](#)
- [The Tasks folder view \(p. 186\)](#)
- [The Drive folder view \(p. 210\)](#)
- [The Drive display area \(p. 212\)](#)
- [The viewer \(p. 214\)](#)

Related topics:

- [What is the purpose of permissions? \(p. 240\)](#)

10.2.1 Sharing data


You can share data with internal users or external partners with read or edit access by inviting those people to a shared item. They will receive an invitation E-Mail. If an external partner accesses the data, the partner will automatically be logged in as a guest user.

The following options are available:




- You can share E-Mail messages with internal users with read access.
- You can share address books and tasks with internal users with read or edit access, with external partners only with read access.
- You can share calendars with internal users and external partners with read or edit access.
- In the Drive app, you can share folders and files with internal users and external partners with read or edit access. If you share a folder, you can define whether subfolders should be shared as well.
- In all apps except for the E-Mail app, you can also create a public link and pass it on to other people.

When sharing items, internal users or external partners are granted certain permissions for the shared data.

Note the following:

- In order to share data, you need to have administrator permissions for the respective folder.
- You cannot share your personal **Inbox** folder. In order to grant other users access to your E-Mail messages, share an E-Mail folder that is located below your **Inbox** folder. Other users have to subscribe to this E-Mail folder in order to read its E-Mail messages.
- You have the exclusive administrator rights for your personal address book, calendar and task folders. You cannot grant administrator rights for these folders to other users.
- Shared folders are marked with the **Share** icon  in all apps except for the Drive app. In the Drive app, shared objects are displayed below the **My shares** folder.

How to share data with internal users or external partners:

1. Select the app that should be used for sharing data. Select a folder in the folder view.
In the Drive app, you can also select a folder or file in the display area.
Note: Depending on the app, some folders cannot be shared.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Share / Permissions**. Click on **Permissions** in the E-Mail app.
In the Drive app, you can also click on **Share** in the tool bar or use the context menu in the display area.
The window for granting permissions opens.
3. In **Who can access this folder?**, you can define whom to grant access to the data:
 - If you exclusively want to share the data with specific people, select **Invited people only**.
 - If you want to share the data not only with specific people, but with everyone who gets a link to the data, select **Anyone with the link and invited people**.
4. To invite the desired people, enter a name or an E-Mail address in **Invite people**.
 - To set a person's permission, select a user role in **Invite as**.
 - To adjust the user role of a person added, click on the assigned user role next to the person or on **Details**.
 - To remove a person's permission, click the **Actions** icon  next to the person. Click on **Remove**.
 If you invite people, the **Invitation message (optional)** input field will be displayed. If required, enter a message.
If you selected **Anyone with the link and invited people**, you can pass on the link by clicking on **Copy link** next to the link.
5. In order to adjust the settings, click the **Sharing options** icon  in the title bar. The following settings are available:

Link options:

 - To set a time limit for the access to the shared data, select a time frame in **Expiration**.
 - To protect the access with a password, enter a password in **Password (optional)**. If you send the public link by E-Mail, the E-Mail contains the password.
 - If a link should also include all subfolders, enable **Share with subfolders**.

Invitation options

 - To automatically send a message to people invited by you to a shared item, enable **Send notification by e-mail**.
 - To also apply all changes to a share to subfolders, enable **Apply to all subfolders**.

Subordinated actions:

[Selecting contacts from an address book \(p. 68\)](#)

Related topics:

[Which permissions can be used? \(p. 254\)](#)

[Use cases for permissions \(p. 256\)](#)

[Editing shares \(p. 247\)](#)

[Resending an invitation \(p. 249\)](#)

[Removing shares \(p. 250\)](#)

[Viewing or editing shares in the Drive app \(p. 251\)](#)


[Subscribing to shared or personal E-Mail folders \(p. 252\)](#)

[Accessing other users' shares \(p. 253\)](#)


10.2.2 Editing shares

The following options are available:

- adjust user roles or permissions
- add new people to a share

Shared folders are marked with the **Share** icon  in all apps except for the Drive app. In the Drive app, shared objects are displayed below the **My shares** folder.

How to edit existing shares:

1. In the folder view, select a folder that you shared.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Share / Permissions**. Click on **Permissions** in the E-Mail app.
In the Drive app, you can also click on **Share** in the tool bar.
The window for granting permissions opens.
3. To edit the user roles or permissions, the following options are available:
 - To adjust a user role, click on the assigned user role next to the person.
 - To adjust the permission details, click on **Details** next to the person.
Note:
 - You cannot change the administrator permissions of a personal folder.
 - Permissions cannot be changed for public links.
4. To add new persons, enter a name or an E-Mail address in **Invite people**.
5. Click on **Save**.

Related topics:

[Which permissions can be used? \(p. 254\)](#)

[Use cases for permissions \(p. 256\)](#)

[Sharing data \(p. 246\)](#)

[Resending an invitation \(p. 249\)](#)

[Removing shares \(p. 250\)](#)



[Viewing or editing shares in the Drive app \(p. 251\)](#)

[Subscribing to shared or personal E-Mail folders \(p. 252\)](#)

10.2.3 Resending an invitation

You can resend an invitation to an already granted share.

How to resend an invitation to a person:

1. In the folder view, select a folder that you shared.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Share / Permissions**. Click on **Permissions** in the E-Mail app.
In the Drive app, you can also click on **Share** in the tool bar.
The window for granting permissions opens.
3. Click the **Actions** icon  next to a user name. Click on **Resend invitation**.
4. Click on **Save**.

Related topics:

[Sharing data \(p. 246\)](#)

[Editing shares \(p. 247\)](#)

[Removing shares \(p. 250\)](#)

[Viewing or editing shares in the Drive app \(p. 251\)](#)

[Subscribing to shared or personal E-Mail folders \(p. 252\)](#)



10.2.4 Removing shares

The following options are available:


- revoke an invitation to a share
- remove a public link
- remove shares for a file or a folder in the Drive app

Shared folders are marked with the **Share** icon  in all apps except for the Drive app. In the Drive app, shared objects are displayed below the **My shares** folder.

How to revoke an invitation to a share:

1. In the folder view, select a folder that you shared.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Share / Permissions**. Click on **Permissions** in the E-Mail app.
The window for granting permissions opens.
3. Click the **Actions** icon  next to a person's name. Click on **Revoke access**.
4. Click on **Save**.

How to remove a public link:

1. In the folder view, select a folder that you shared.
2. Click the **Actions** icon  next to the folder name. Click on **Share / Permissions**.
The window for granting permissions opens.
3. Click on **Unshare**.

How to remove the share for a file or a folder in the Drive app:

1. Click on **My shares** in the folder tree.
2. Select a share in the detail view. Click on **Revoke access** in the tool bar.

Related topics:

- [Sharing data \(p. 246\)](#)
- [Editing shares \(p. 247\)](#)
- [Resending an invitation \(p. 249\)](#)
- [Viewing or editing shares in the Drive app \(p. 251\)](#)

10.2.5 Viewing or editing shares in the Drive app




In addition to the basic functions, the following options are available in the Drive app:

- You can display your shared objects as a list. You can sort the list by different criteria.
- You can edit or revoke shares.

How to view your shares in the Drive app:

1. In the Drive app, open **My shares** in the folder view.

The folders and files shared by you are displayed in the detail view. For each share a row with the following details is displayed in the detail view:

- An icon indicates the share's object type: file or folder.
- The share's name and folder path. To open a folder, click on a path entry.
- Three icons indicate whether an object has been shared with specific users:
 - **Internal users** icon : The object has been shared for internal users.
 - **External users** icon : The object has been shared for guest users or for guest users and internal users.
 - **Public link** icon : The folder has been shared with a public link.
- The share's creation date.

2. You can do the following:

- To sort the shares list, click on **Sort by** above the list.
- To display the folder of a shared object, open the object's context menu. Select **Show in Drive**.
- To display the content of a share's parent folder, click on a path entry in the list.

How to edit a share in the Drive app:

1. In the Drive app, open **My shares** in the folder view.

The folders and files shared by you are displayed in the detail view.

2. Select a folder or file in the detail view. The following options are available:

- To edit the share, click on **Edit share** in the tool bar or context menu.
Depending on the type of share, the window for editing the public link or the window for changing the permissions opens. Change the settings.
- To revoke the share, click on **Revoke access** in the tool bar or context menu.

Related topics:

[Which permissions can be used? \(p. 254\)](#)

[Use cases for permissions \(p. 256\)](#)

[What is the purpose of permissions? \(p. 240\)](#)

[Sharing data \(p. 246\)](#)

[Editing shares \(p. 247\)](#)

[Resending an invitation \(p. 249\)](#)


[Removing shares \(p. 250\)](#)

[Accessing other users' shares \(p. 253\)](#)

10.2.6 Subscribing to shared or personal E-Mail folders

In order to see E-Mail folders shared by other users, you have to subscribe to those folders. You are automatically subscribed to your personal E-Mail folders. To hide a personal E-Mail folder, you have to cancel the subscription.

How to subscribe to personal or shared E-Mail folders:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **E-Mail** in the side bar.
3. Click on **Change IMAP subscription** in the display area.
4. In the *Subscribe IMAP folders* window activate the checkboxes of the folders that you want to subscribe to. Click on **Save**.

Related topics:

- [Sharing data \(p. 246\)](#)
- [Editing shares \(p. 247\)](#)
- [Resending an invitation \(p. 249\)](#)
- [Removing shares \(p. 250\)](#)
- [Downloading Personal Data \(p. 261\)](#)

10.2.7 Accessing other users' shares


In the folder view, you have access to data shared with you by other users. You can define which public and shared address books, calendars or task folders are displayed in the folder view.

How to access data shared by other users:

1. Open the shared folder in the folder view. Depending on the app, you can find these folders below **Shared address books, Shared calendars, Shared tasks, Shared files.**

If a user shared data with you, a folder named after the user will be displayed. If the shared data came from another groupware installation, the user name will be appended with the name of the other domain.

You are automatically subscribed to shared address books, calendars and task folders. To hide these folders, cancel the subscription in the settings of the respective app.

Tip: To see the permissions that have been granted for the shared folder, click the **Actions** icon . Click on **Sharing**.

2. Open the folder to display its contents.
3. Select one or several objects. Use the function bar entries.
Note: Depending on whether the objects are shared with read or edit rights, different functions can be available.

Related topics:

[Which permissions can be used? \(p. 254\)](#)

[Use cases for permissions \(p. 256\)](#)

[Sharing data \(p. 246\)](#)

[Viewing or editing shares in the Drive app \(p. 251\)](#)

[Subscribing to shared or personal E-Mail folders \(p. 252\)](#)

[Subscribing to public and shared address books \(p. 123\)](#)

[Subscribing to public and shared calendars \(p. 168\)](#)

[Subscribing to public and shared task folders \(p. 199\)](#)

[Subscribing to public and shared Drive folders \(p. 221\)](#)

10.2.8 Which permissions can be used?

In order to easily grant logical permission combinations, there are specific preset user roles: A user role consists of logical permission combinations. You can also grant detailed permissions. You can grant such permissions by sharing objects.

Administrator: A folder's owner

A folder's administrator owns all permissions for this folder. The owner can grant other users permissions to the folder.

- Folder permissions: create objects and subfolders, rename folders
- Object permissions: read all objects, edit all objects, delete all objects

Viewer: Read permissions

A viewer can read all existing objects. A viewer has no other permissions.

- Folder permissions: view the folder
- Object permissions: read all objects

Reviewer: Limited edit permissions

A reviewer can read and edit existing objects. The reviewer cannot create new objects though. The reviewer cannot delete objects.

- Folder permissions: view the folder
- Object permissions: read all objects, edit all objects

Author: Full edit permissions

An author is allowed to change or delete existing objects, to create and edit new objects, and to create subfolders.

- Folder permissions: create objects and subfolders
- Object permissions: read all objects, edit all objects, delete all objects

Detailed permissions

The preset permissions for the user roles can be refined. The following permissions can be granted:

- Folder
 - view the folder
 - create objects
 - create objects and subfolders
- read permissions
 - none
 - read own objects
 - read all objects
- write permissions
 - none
 - edit own objects
 - edit all objects
- delete permissions
 - none
 - delete own objects
 - delete all objects

Related topics:

- [Use cases for permissions \(p. 256\)](#)
- [What is the purpose of permissions? \(p. 240\)](#)
- [Sharing Data \(p. 245\)](#)
- [Sharing data \(p. 246\)](#)
- [Accessing other users' shares \(p. 253\)](#)
- [Editing shares \(p. 247\)](#)
- [Resending an invitation \(p. 249\)](#)
- [Removing shares \(p. 250\)](#)
- [Viewing or editing shares in the Drive app \(p. 251\)](#)

10.2.9 Use cases for permissions

The following examples show which permissions need to be granted to other users or external partners to enable them to execute specific actions in a shared folder. You can grant such permissions by sharing objects.

- **Example 1:** View objects. Not change and delete objects. Not create new objects.
Settings in Details:
 - Folders: view the folder
 - Read permissions: read all objects
 - Write permissions: none
 - Delete permissions: none
 - Administrative role: UserYou can also assign the Viewer role.
- **Example 2:** View objects. Not change and delete objects. Create and edit new objects.
Settings in Details:
 - Folders: view the folder
 - Read permissions: read all objects
 - Write permissions: edit own objects
 - Delete permissions: delete own objects
 - Administrative role: User
- **Example 3:** Not view existing objects. Create and edit new objects.
Settings in Details:
 - Folders: create objects
 - Read permissions: read own objects
 - Write permissions: edit own objects
 - Delete permissions: delete own objects
 - Administrative role: User
- **Example 4:** View and edit all objects. Create and edit subfolders and objects,
Settings in Details:
 - Folders: create objects and subfolders
 - Read permissions: read all objects
 - Write permissions: edit all objects
 - Delete permissions: delete all objects
 - Administrative role: UserYou can also assign the **Author** role.
- **Example 5:** All permissions. Grant permissions to other users.
Settings in Details:
 - Folders: create objects and subfolders
 - Read permissions: read all objects
 - Write permissions: edit all objects
 - Delete permissions: delete all objects
 - Administrative role: AdministratorYou can also assign the **Administrator** role.

Related topics:

- [Which permissions can be used? \(p. 254\)](#)
- [What is the purpose of permissions? \(p. 240\)](#)
- [Sharing data \(p. 246\)](#)
- [Accessing other users' shares \(p. 253\)](#)
- [Editing shares \(p. 247\)](#)
- [Resending an invitation \(p. 249\)](#)
- [Removing shares \(p. 250\)](#)
- [Viewing or editing shares in the Drive app \(p. 251\)](#)

10.3 Managing Accounts

Learn how to manage your [accounts](#) that have been set up by default or have been set up by you.

- your primary E-Mail account
- social network accounts
- your Google account for calendar, contacts, Drive
- storage accounts

The following options are available:


- [Editing the primary E-Mail account \(p. 259\)](#)
- [Viewing, editing, deleting accounts \(p. 260\)](#)

10.3.1 Editing the primary E-Mail account

The following options are available:

- Change the name of your primary E-Mail account. This name is displayed in the E-Mail settings.
- Change the preset sender name
- Change the folder of your primary E-Mail account

How to edit the primary E-Mail account:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Accounts**.
3. Click on **Edit** next to the primary E-Mail account in the display area. The *Edit e-mail account* window displays the current settings.
4. To change the account name, click into the input field next to **Account name**.
Note: The entries for **Incoming server** and **Outgoing server** cannot be changed.
5. To change the preset sender name, click into the input field next to **Your name**.
You can overwrite this preset name when composing an E-Mail.
6. To select other folders, browse down to **Standard folders**.
Click on **Select** next to a folder. Select a subfolder below the **INBOX** folder.
Note: Do not select the **INBOX** folder. Select a subfolder below **INBOX**.
7. Click on **Save** at the bottom of the window.

Related topics:

[Viewing, editing, deleting accounts \(p. 260\)](#)

[Adding E-Mail Accounts \(p. 97\)](#)


[Settings for composing E-Mail messages \(p. 100\)](#)

10.3.2 Viewing, editing, deleting accounts


Depending on the account type, you can edit different account settings:

- For E-Mail accounts: account name, sender name, Unified Mail usage, server parameters, folder names
- for social networks: account name

How to view, edit or delete accounts:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Accounts**.
3. Click on **Edit** next to an account in the display area. The settings are displayed in an editing window. If you use several services from the selected provider, the editing window shows an overview of the services.
4. Change the settings.
Notes for editing external E-Mail accounts:
 - To change the preset sender name, click into the input field next to **Your name**.
 - You can overwrite this preset name when composing an E-Mail.

Further options in the editing window:

- Depending on the account type, you can open the respective folder in the corresponding app by clicking on the name of the service.
- If you no longer want to access an account from within the groupware, you can delete this account. To do so, click the **Delete** icon  next to an account.

Related topics:

- [Editing the primary E-Mail account \(p. 259\)](#)
- [Adding a Portal widget for social networks \(p. 52\)](#)
- [Adding E-Mail Accounts \(p. 97\)](#)
- [Using Unified Mail \(p. 88\)](#)
- [Selecting sender address \(p. 69\)](#)
- [Adding storage accounts \(p. 235\)](#)

10.4 Downloading Personal Data



You can download your personal data that are saved in the groupware:

- E-Mail messages received and sent
- contacts, appointments, tasks
- The data in Drive

Note the following:

- Depending on the data volume, the download can take a while.
- The data are delivered in common data formats.
- The data are downloaded as zip archive.

How to download your personal data:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Download personal data**.
3. Select the apps whose data should be downloaded. You can use different options for the specific apps.
Click on **Request download**.
While the data are being zipped to an archive, you can continue with your work.
In order to cancel the process, click on **Abort download request**.
4. You will get an E-Mail as soon as the archive can be downloaded. Click on **Download** in the E-Mail.
The *Download your personal data* page will be displayed again. Click the **Download** icon .
Note: On top of the page you can see how long the zip archive will be available. After this period, the archive will be automatically deleted.

Options:

- For each app, you can define whether specific folders should be downloaded as well. To do so, click on **Options** below the app. The following options exist:
 - E-Mail
 - Define the E-Mail folders that should be downloaded.
 - In case you also want to download folders that you are currently not subscribed to, enable **Unsubscribed folders**.
Then, all folders will be downloaded that are currently shared with you or that are included in your primary E-Mail account, even if those folders are not visible in the folder tree.
 - Calendar
 - Define the calendars that are to be downloaded in addition to your private calendars.
 - In case you also want to download shared calendars that you are no longer subscribed to, enable **Unsubscribed calendars**.
Then, all calendars will be downloaded that are currently shared with you even if those calendars are not visible in the folder tree.
 - Address Book
 - Define the address books that are to be downloaded in addition to your private address books.
 - Drive
 - Define the folders that are to be downloaded in addition to your private address folders.
 - In order to not only download the current version but all versions of a file, enable **Include all file versions**.
 - Tasks
 - Define the task folders that are to be downloaded in addition to your private task folders.
- If the zip archive exceeds a certain file size, it will be split in several zip files. In **Maximum file size**, you can set the maximum size of the single zip files.

Note: The zip archive will be ready for download on the server for a specific period. If you request your data a second time within this period, the current zip archive will be deleted on the server.

Related topics:

[Saving email messages \(p. 83\)](#)

Exporting contacts (p. 128)
Exporting appointments (p. 174)
Exporting tasks (p. 203)
Subscribing to shared or personal E-Mail folders (p. 252)
Subscribing to public and shared address books (p. 123)
Subscribing to public and shared calendars (p. 168)
Subscribing to public and shared task folders (p. 199)

11 Data Security

Learn how to increase the data security when working with the groupware.

- Protect your data against unauthorised access.
- Minimise the threat of malware.
- Prevent the reception of unwanted messages.

The following options are available:


- [Signing out Automatically \(p. 264\)](#)
You can define whether you are automatically signed out.
- [Externally Linked Images in E-Mail Messages \(p. 265\)](#)
You can define whether externally linked images in E-Mail messages are automatically loaded and displayed.
- [Showing the E-Mail Authenticity \(p. 266\)](#)
You can define the E-Mail messages for which the authenticity is displayed.
Note: Depending on the configuration, this function might not be available.
- [Using a Whitelist \(p. 267\)](#)
You can enter trusted E-Mail sources in a whitelist.
Note: Depending on the configuration, this function might not be available.
- [Display or sign out from active clients \(p. 268\)](#)
You can display active clients and sign out of them if required.
- [Using Additional Passwords for Applications \(p. 269\)](#)
You can create and manage additional passwords to use with other devices.
- [Multi-Factor Authentication \(p. 270\)](#)
You can set up a 2-step verification for the login.

In addition, you can encrypt your E-Mail messages and files. Information on encryption can be found in [Encrypting Data with Guard \(p. 277\)](#)

11.1 Signing out Automatically

You can define whether you are automatically signed out if you have not worked with the groupware for a specific time.

How to define whether you are automatically signed out:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Security**.
3. Select an entry from the **Automatic sign out** drop-down in the display area.

Related topics:

[Externally Linked Images in E-Mail Messages \(p. 265\)](#)

[Showing the E-Mail Authenticity \(p. 266\)](#)

[Using a Whitelist \(p. 267\)](#)

[Display or sign out from active clients \(p. 268\)](#)


[Using Additional Passwords for Applications \(p. 269\)](#)

11.2 Externally Linked Images in E-Mail Messages

Externally linked images are not part of the E-Mail itself. They are loaded from an external source upon reading the E-Mail. You can define whether those images are loaded and displayed. If you allow loading externally linked images, your privacy and computer are endangered by the following security issues:

- The sender can gather information, e.g. whether your E-Mail address is valid or when you retrieved the E-Mail. Such information can e.g. be used to purposefully send spam E-Mail messages.
- The externally linked graphic can be used to infect your computer with malware.

How to define the loading of externally linked images:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Security**.
3. You can enable or disable the **Allow pre-loading of externally linked images** option in the display area.
 - If externally linked images are not to be displayed, disable the setting.
 - If externally linked images are to be loaded and displayed, enable the setting.

Related topics:

[Signing out Automatically \(p. 264\)](#)

[Showing the E-Mail Authenticity \(p. 266\)](#)

[Using a Whitelist \(p. 267\)](#)

[Display or sign out from active clients \(p. 268\)](#)

[Using Additional Passwords for Applications \(p. 269\)](#)

[Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)


11.3 Showing the E-Mail Authenticity

For incoming E-Mail messages, the server checks whether the E-Mail actually originates from the provided sender address. The check is run to identify illegitimate E-Mail messages. The E-Mail authenticity check provides one of the following results:

- The E-Mail is classified as potentially dangerous. In the detail view, the sender is displayed in red font colour.
- The authenticity cannot definitely be verified. In the detail view, the sender is displayed in yellow font colour.
- The verification was successful. In the detail view, the sender is displayed in green font colour.
- The verification was successful. The E-Mail was sent from a trustworthy address.

Depending on the configuration, you can define the E-Mail messages for which the authenticity is displayed.

How to define the E-Mail messages for which the authenticity is displayed:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Security**.
3. Select an entry from the **Show email authenticity** drop-down in the display area.
 - **Disabled**. No authenticity is displayed. If a hoster marks the E-Mail sent from the hoster's address as trustworthy though, this authenticity will be displayed.
 - **Suspicious and unclassified e-mail messages only**. Displays the authenticity for the following E-Mail messages:
 - E-Mail messages that are classified as potentially dangerous.
 - E-Mail messages for which the authenticity could not definitely be verified
 - **All E-Mail messages**. Displays the authenticity for all E-Mail messages.

Related topics:

- [Signing out Automatically \(p. 264\)](#)
- [Externally Linked Images in E-Mail Messages \(p. 265\)](#)
- [Using a Whitelist \(p. 267\)](#)
- [Display or sign out from active clients \(p. 268\)](#)
- [Using Additional Passwords for Applications \(p. 269\)](#)
- [Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)


11.4 Using a Whitelist

Depending on the configuration, you can create a [whitelist](#). All E-Mail messages from senders who are recorded in the whitelist, are treated as follows:

- The E-Mail is not treated as unwanted E-Mail.
- The E-Mail source is labeled as trustworthy.
- Externally linked images are immediately loaded and displayed.

Warning: When making entries into the whitelist, several security measures are circumvented. Only enter E-Mails or [domain names](#) in the whitelist if you absolutely trust them.

How to create a whitelist:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Security**.
3. Enter the respective E-Mail addresses or domain names as a comma separated list in the input field below **Always trust e-mail messages from the following senders** in the display area. Please also note:
 - When entering multiple E-Mail addresses or domain names, separate the entries with a comma.
 - Make sure to enter the exact E-Mail addresses or domain names.

Related topics:

[Signing out Automatically \(p. 264\)](#)

[Externally Linked Images in E-Mail Messages \(p. 265\)](#)

[Showing the E-Mail Authenticity \(p. 266\)](#)

[Display or sign out from active clients \(p. 268\)](#)

[Using Additional Passwords for Applications \(p. 269\)](#)

[Displaying email messages \(p. 64\)](#)

11.5 Display or sign out from active clients


You can be signed in to your groupware account with different clients on various devices simultaneously, e.g. with desktop browsers, E-Mail clients, tablets, smartphones. With each login, an active [session](#) is created on the groupware server. On the following occasions it can make sense to list active sessions and to terminate them if required:

- You want to check whether you are logged in to a certain device or client.
- You want to log out from a certain device.
- You want to prevent reaching the maximum number of allowed sessions as you then could no longer log in from an additional device.

The following options are available:

- display all active clients
- terminate single sessions
- terminate all sessions except the current one

How to edit the active clients:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Security**. Click on **Active clients**.
In the display area, all devices will be listed which you are currently signed in with.
3. In order to terminate sessions, do one of the following:
 - In order to terminate a single session, click on **Sign out** next to the client.
 - To terminate all sessions except the active one, click on **Sign out from all clients**.

Related topics:

- [Signing out Automatically \(p. 264\)](#)
- [Externally Linked Images in E-Mail Messages \(p. 265\)](#)
- [Showing the E-Mail Authenticity \(p. 266\)](#)
- [Using a Whitelist \(p. 267\)](#)
- [Using Additional Passwords for Applications \(p. 269\)](#)

11.6 Using Additional Passwords for Applications


In addition to your groupware login method, you can use additional passwords that are limited for that use on certain apps and devices. Such passwords can be used for signing in to the Drive App, Mail App, CalDav or CardDav client. This method has the following advantages:

- The clients can access specific groupware functions only. This enhances the security for the user.
- In the groupware settings you can view the clients and devices you created passwords for.
- You can delete passwords and prevent a client access, e.g. when losing a device.

The following options are available:

- create a new password for a specific app
- display or delete existing app passwords

How to use passwords for a specific app:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.

In the side bar, click on **Security**. Click on **Application Passwords**.

The *Application Passwords* page will be displayed.

2. In the **Application** drop-down below **Add passwords**, select the app for which you want to add a password.


Enter a name for the new password in **Password name**. This name is later used for displaying the app's credentials.

3. Click on **Add new password**.

The *Password Created* window opens. It shows the user name for the login and an automatically created password. You can use those credentials to sign in to the selected app.

Notes:

- This password is only valid for the selected app.
- This password will only be displayed once. As soon as you close the window, you can no longer display the password.

4. To delete a password for a specific app, identify the password below **Existing passwords**. Click the **Delete** icon  next to the password.

To sign in to this app in the future, either use your groupware credentials or create another password for this app.

Related topics:

[Signing out Automatically \(p. 264\)](#)

[Externally Linked Images in E-Mail Messages \(p. 265\)](#)

[Showing the E-Mail Authenticity \(p. 266\)](#)

[Using a Whitelist \(p. 267\)](#)

11.7 Multi-Factor Authentication

By default, you only log in to the groupware with your username and password. Depending on the configuration, you can increase the security when logging in by using an additional authentication that is executed after the usual login. This procedure is generally called multi-factor authentication.

The additional authentication is done by verifying your identity with a device owned by you. The following options are available to verify your identity:

- **Google Authenticator**
You need to install an app on your mobile device to get an auto-generated code. You need to enter this code to confirm your identity.
- **Yubikey, Google Security Key or compatible FIDO device**
With a security key that is connected with your PC via USB or wirelessly, your identity is verified during the login.
- **send code via SMS**
An SMS with a code is sent to your mobile device. You need to enter this code to confirm your identity.

The following options are available:


- [Setting up verification methods \(p. 271\)](#)
- [Verifying a login by using an authenticator app \(p. 273\)](#)
- [Verifying the login with a security key \(p. 273\)](#)
- [Verifying the login with an SMS code \(p. 274\)](#)
- [Recovering the verification \(p. 275\)](#)
- [Managing verification methods \(p. 276\)](#)

11.7.1 Setting up verification methods

Prior to being able to use a 2-step verification for the next login, you have to set up the additional verification methods wanted. The following options are available:

- Set up verification methods.
- As soon as having set up an initial verification method, you have to set a recovery method. You need the recovery e.g. in case you have lost your device that you use for the verification. In this case, you can log in to the groupware by using the recovery method.

How to set up verification methods:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
In the side bar, click on **Security**. Click on **2-step verification**.
2. Click on **Add verification option** in the display area.
The *Add verification option* window opens. Depending on the configuration, various verification methods are offered.
3. Setting up a verification by using an Authenticator App:
 - a. Install Google Authenticator or compatible app on the mobile device that you want to use for the verification.
Launch the app.
 - b. Click on **Google Authenticator or compatible** in the *Add verification option* window.
 - c. The *Authenticator registration* window displays a QR code. Scan the QR code with the Authenticator app on the mobile device.
 - d. The app on the mobile device displays a code. Enter this code in the *Authenticator registration* window. Click on **OK**.When having set up the initial verification method, the *Add recovery option* window is displayed. In the following instruction, you will learn how to [add a recovery method](#).
4. Set up a verification with a security key:
Note: Depending on the browser, this verification method might not be supported.
 - a. Connect your security key with your workstation. Depending on the security key, a USB or wireless connection is used.
 - b. Click on **Yubikey, Google Security Keys or compatible FIDO device** in the *Add verification option* window.
 - c. Activate your security key e.g. by pressing a button on the security key.When having set up the initial verification method, the *Add recovery option* window is displayed. In the following instruction, you will learn how to [add a recovery method](#).
5. Setting up a verification via text message:
 - a. Click on **Code via text message** in the *Add verification option* window.
 - b. The *Add Multifactor Device* window opens. Enter your mobile phone number.
 - c. Shortly after, you will receive a text message with a code. Enter this code in the *Confirm Code* window. Click on **OK**.After having set up the initial verification method, the *Add recovery option* window opens. In the following instruction, you will learn how to [add a recovery method](#).

How to add a recovery method in the *Add recovery option* window:**1.** Setting up a recovery via text message:

Note: When having selected the verification via text message as initial verification method, you have to enter another mobile device for a recovery via text message.

- a.** Click on **Code via text message**.
- b.** The *Add Multi-factor Device* window opens. Enter the phone number of the mobile device that you want to use for a recovery.
- c.** Shortly after, you will receive a text message with a code. Enter this code in the *Confirm Code* window. Click on **OK**.

2. Setting up a recovery via recovery code:

- a.** Click on **Backup code to access your account**.
- b.** The *Recovery code* window opens. It displays a code that can be used for the recovery.
- c.** In order to print the recovery code, click on **Print**.
In order to save the recovery code as a text file, click on **Download**. In case of a recovery, you can import the recovery code from this text file.

Related topics:

- [Verifying a login by using an authenticator app \(p. 273\)](#)
- [Verifying the login with a security key \(p. 273\)](#)
- [Verifying the login with an SMS code \(p. 274\)](#)
- [Managing verification methods \(p. 276\)](#)

11.7.2 Verifying a login by using an authenticator app

This verification method works as follows:

- Use a code that is created by an app on your mobile device.
- The code is valid for 30 seconds. As soon as the time expires, a new code is automatically displayed which again is valid for 30 seconds.
- When logging in, you have to use the same authenticator app that you used for setting up the verification method.

How to verify your identity with an authenticator app:

1. Launch the authenticator app on your mobile device.
If the app displays multiple services, select the service that you use for verifying the groupware login.
2. Log in to the groupware with your username and password.
3. If having set up multiple verification methods, the *Select 2-step verification method* window opens. Select **Google Authenticator**.
The *2-Step Verification* window opens. In **Authentication Code**, enter the code that is currently displayed by the app on your mobile device.

Related topics:

[Verifying the login with a security key \(p. 273\)](#)

[Verifying the login with an SMS code \(p. 274\)](#)

[Setting up verification methods \(p. 271\)](#)

11.7.3 Verifying the login with a security key

This verification method works as follows:

- Use a security key that you connect with your work station via USB or wirelessly.
- While signing in, you are prompted to activate the security key e.g. by pressing a button on the security key.

Note: Depending on the browser, this verification method might not be supported.

How to verify your identity with a security key:

1. Connect your workstation with the security key.
2. Log in to the groupware with your username and password.
3. If having set up multiple verification methods, the *Select 2-step verification method* window opens. Select **Yubikey, Google Security Keys or compatible FIDO device**.
The *Confirm Code* window opens.
Activate your security key.

Related topics:

[Verifying a login by using an authenticator app \(p. 273\)](#)

[Verifying the login with an SMS code \(p. 274\)](#)

[Setting up verification methods \(p. 271\)](#)

11.7.4 Verifying the login with an SMS code

This verification method works as follows:

- Use a code that you receive by SMS on your mobile device.
- The last digits of the mobile phone number of the device to which the SMS is sent to are displayed.

How to verify your identity with an SMS code:

1. Log in to the groupware with your username and password.
2. If having set up multiple verification methods, the *Select 2-step verification method* window opens. Select **SMS Code**.
An SMS with a code is sent to your mobile device.
3. The *2-Step Verification* window opens. Enter this code.

Related topics:

[Verifying a login by using an authenticator app \(p. 273\)](#)

[Verifying the login with a security key \(p. 273\)](#)

[Setting up verification methods \(p. 271\)](#)

11.7.5 Recovering the verification

You need the recovery e.g. in case you have lost the device that you use for the verification. In this case, you can log in to the groupware by using the recovery method.

How to log in using a recovery method:

1. Recovering with a recovery code:
 - a. Click on **I lost my device** in the *2-Step Verification* or *Select 2-Step Verification Method* window. In a window, you are asked to enter the recovery code.
 - b. Enter the recovery code.
If you downloaded the recovery code as text file when having set up the recovery method, you can also click on **Upload recovery file**. Select the text file with the recovery code.
 - c. Shortly after, you will receive an SMS with a 4-digit authentication code. Enter this code. Click on **OK**.
2. Recovering via an SMS code:
 - a. Click on **I lost my device** in the *2-Step Verification* or *Select 2-Step Verification Method* window. In a window, you are asked to enter the recovery code.
 - b. Shortly after, you will receive an SMS with a 4-digit authentication code. Enter this code. Click on **OK**.

Related topics:

[Verifying a login by using an authenticator app \(p. 273\)](#)

[Verifying the login with a security key \(p. 273\)](#)

[Setting up verification methods \(p. 271\)](#)


11.7.6 Managing verification methods

The following options are available:

- add a verification method
- change a verification device's name
- remove a verification device

You can set up and manage multiple verification methods but only one recovery method.

How to manage verification methods or verification devices:

1. Click the **Settings** icon  on the right side of the menu bar. Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Security**. Click on **2-step verification**.
3. The following options are available:
 - **Edit**. Opens the *Edit multi-factor device* window to change the name of the device.
 - **Delete** icon . Removes a verification device.
 - **Add verification option**. Adds a new verification method.

Related topics:

[Setting up verification methods \(p. 271\)](#)

12 Encrypting Data with Guard

Guard is a groupware security component that allows encrypting E-Mail messages and files.

- Encrypt your E-Mail communication with other users or external partners.
- Encrypt your files. Share the encrypted data with other users.
- Use the security options to define the encryption level.
- The encrypted data are password-protected. Depending on the configuration, you can reset your password if forgotten.

Learn how to work with Guard.

- [Setting up Guard \(p. 278\)](#)
- [Encrypting E-Mail Conversations \(p. 279\)](#)
- [Encrypting E-Mail Conversations with Autocrypt \(p. 282\)](#)
- [Encrypting or Decrypting Files \(p. 286\)](#)
- [Encrypting Office Documents \(p. 290\)](#)
- [Signing Out from Guard \(p. 294\)](#)
- [GuardSettings \(p. 295\)](#)

Information on additional security-related topics can be found in [Data Security \(p. 263\)](#).

12.1 Setting up Guard


Prior to be able to use Guard, you have to apply some basic settings:

- You have to enter a Guard security password that is used to encrypt data and to access encrypted data.
- Enter a secondary E-Mail address that is used if you forget your Guard security password. In this case, use the function for resetting the Guard security password. A new password will then be sent to you. For security reasons, it is highly recommended to enter a secondary E-Mail address for this purpose. Otherwise the new password will be sent to your groupware E-Mail account.


There are two options for entering the basic settings:

- Define the basic settings while initially using an encryption function.
- Define the basic settings in the groupware settings before using the encryption function.

How to define the basic settings when initially using an encryption function:

1. Enable the encryption function when composing an E-Mail, encrypting a file or uploading a new file by clicking on the **Encrypt** icon .
2. You consecutively will be asked to enter a Guard security password and a secondary E-Mail address. Enter the data.

How to define the basic settings before initially using encryption:

1. Click the **Settings** icon . Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Security**. Click on **Guard Security**.
When initially opening the Guard security settings, the *Guard Create Security Keys* window opens.
3. In the **Password** field, enter the password that you want to use for encrypting your data.
Confirm the password in the **Verify** field by entering it again.
4. In the **Enter new secondary e-mail** field, enter the E-Mail address that is used for receiving a temporary password for resetting your Guard security password.
5. Click on **OK**.

12.2 Encrypting E-Mail Conversations


The following options are available:

- [Reading encrypted E-Mail messages \(p. 279\)](#)
- [Sending encrypted E-Mail messages \(p. 280\)](#)
- [How can external recipients read an encrypted E-Mail? \(p. 281\)](#)
- [Encrypting incoming E-Mail messages by using a filter rule \(p. 281\)](#)

12.2.1 Reading encrypted E-Mail messages

To be able to read an encrypted E-Mail, the Guard security password is required.

How to read an encrypted E-Mail:

1. Select an E-Mail with the **Encrypted** icon . In the detail view, the notification **Secure E-Mail, enter your Guard security password.** is displayed.
Note: If, when having used guard the last time, you set that Guard should remember the security password, the E-Mail will be displayed immediately.
2. Enter the Guard security password.
You can define how long the security password should be remembered by Guard. To do so, enable **Keep me logged into Guard**. Select a time range from the list.
In the Guard security settings, you can [define a default value](#) for the time range.
3. Click on **OK**. The content is shown in plain text.
If the E-Mail includes attachments, functions for using the attachments' decrypted or encrypted versions will be displayed.

Related topics:

[Sending encrypted E-Mail messages \(p. 280\)](#)





[How can external recipients read an encrypted E-Mail? \(p. 281\)](#)

12.2.2 Sending encrypted E-Mail messages

The following options are available:

- Send an E-Mail encrypted. Only you and the recipients can read the E-Mail content.
- Sending an E-Mail with a signature. The signature ensures that the recipient is able to recognise whether the E-Mail content has been changed in transport.
- Sending an encrypted E-Mail with a signature.

How to send an encrypted E-Mail:

1. Click the **Enable Encryption** icon . A function bar will be displayed above the E-Mail text. A text will be displayed within the function bar notifying you about the encryption of the E-Mail.
Icons next to the recipients indicate whether the message can be encrypted for this recipient. If hovering over an icon, a description will be displayed.
2. In order to show additional options, click on **Options** .
 - In order to additionally sign the E-Mail, enable **Sign e-mail**.
You can also click on the **Options** menu  in the button bar.
 - To enable The E-Mail recipient to send an encrypted reply, the recipient needs to have your public key. You can send your public key as an attachment. To do so, enable **Attach my public key**.
You can also click on the **Options** menu  in the button bar.
 - If **Show advanced settings** is enabled in the Guard settings, you can set the PGP format.
By default, encrypted E-Mail messages are sent in **PGP Mime** format. Some older clients only support PGP Inline. If the recipient uses such a client, enable **Inline**.
Note: If you use **Inline**, you can not send E-Mail messages in HTML format.
3. Click on **Send**.
When sending to new recipients, a window is displayed that allows to send notes for opening the encrypted E-Mail to the recipients.

User interface:

[The E-Mail editing window \(p. 63\)](#)

Related topics:

[Reading encrypted E-Mail messages \(p. 279\)](#)

[How can external recipients read an encrypted E-Mail? \(p. 281\)](#)

[Sending a new email \(p. 67\)](#)

[GuardSettings \(p. 295\)](#)

12.2.3 How can external recipients read an encrypted E-Mail?

You can also send encrypted E-Mail messages to external recipients who are not groupware users. When adding an external recipient, Guard checks whether a public key is available for this E-Mail address. Depending on the result, Guard uses different procedures for sending the encrypted E-Mail:

- If there is a public key for the recipient:
 - The message will be sent encrypted using this key. The recipient can read the message with his/her private key.
 - If there is no public key for the recipient:
 - If the external user already has a guest account, he/she will receive an E-Mail with the link to the login page of his/her guest account. When having logged in, he/she can read the encrypted E-Mail on the guest page. He/she can send an encrypted reply from this page.
 - If there is no guest account, a guest account will be created. The external recipient will receive an E-Mail with a link to a guest page and an automatically created password. The user logs in to the guest page. Then he/she can create a password.
Depending on the configuration, the automatically created password and the link to the guest page will be sent in separate E-Mail messages.
 - Depending on the configuration, guest account E-Mail messages will be deleted from the server after a specific number of days.
- The external recipient can send an encrypted reply to the encrypted E-Mail. It is not possible to add additional recipients.


Related topics:

- [Reading encrypted E-Mail messages \(p. 279\)](#)
- [Sending encrypted E-Mail messages \(p. 280\)](#)

12.2.4 Encrypting incoming E-Mail messages by using a filter rule

Depending on the configuration, you can automatically encrypt E-Mail messages by creating a respective E-Mail filter.

How to automatically encrypt incoming E-Mail messages:

1. Click the **Settings** icon . Click on **Settings**.
2. Click on **E-Mail** in the side bar. Click on **Filter rules**.
3. In the display area, click on **Add new rule**. The *Create new rule* window opens.
 - Enter a rule name.
 - Click on **Add condition**. Make a selection from the drop-down menu. Complete the condition details.
 - Click on **Add action**. Select the encryption action from the menu. Complete the action details.
4. You can set whether subsequent rules are to be processed if the rule is met. To do so, enable or disable **Process subsequent rules**.
5. Click on **Save**.

Related topics:

- [Adding a condition \(p. 91\)](#)
- [Adding an action \(p. 92\)](#)

12.3 Encrypting E-Mail Conversations with Autocrypt

The Autocrypt standard has been developed to provide automatic E-Mail encryption. This is done as follows:

- Each E-Mail sent includes the public key of the sender in the E-Mail header. This key will be imported automatically or manually by the recipient.

Autocrypt has the following limitations:

- There is no check for automatically imported keys to see whether they are real or fake.
- For this reason, an automatically imported key is not used for verifying the sender's signature.

To manage Autocrypt keys and verify them later, the following options are available:


- [Importing Autocrypt keys \(p. 283\)](#)
- [Managing Autocrypt keys \(p. 284\)](#)
- [Transferring Autocrypt keys to other clients \(p. 285\)](#)

12.3.1 Importing Autocrypt keys

In the advanced Guard settings, you can define whether Autocrypt keys are automatically imported. You can set the following:

- All Autocrypt keys received are automatically imported. An automatically imported key is used as follows:
 - An outgoing message to this contact can be encrypted with this key.
 - The signature of an incoming message from this contact will not be verified with the key. That means: It cannot be verified if the sender is real and the message content has been unaltered.
- For each Autocrypt key received you will be asked whether to import the key. Details of the Autocrypt key will be shown allowing you to check its validity. If you import the key, it will be regarded as verified. A verified key will be used as follows:
 - An outgoing message to this contact can be encrypted with this key.
 - The signature of an incoming message from this contact will be verified using the key. If the verification is successful, the sender is real and the message content is unaltered.

How to define how Autocrypt keys are imported:

1. Click the **Settings** icon . Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Security**. Click on **Guard**.
3. Enable **Show advanced settings**. Items for managing keys and for the Autocrypt settings will be displayed.
4. Below **Autocrypt**, proceed as follows:
 - To import Autocrypt keys, enable **Search incoming e-mail messages for keys in header**.
 - If you enable **Import autocrypt keys without asking**, Autocrypt keys will be imported automatically. This is the default setting if **Show advanced settings** is disabled.
 - If you disable **Import autocrypt keys without asking**, you will be asked whether you want to import the key. The key details are shown so that you can check the validity of the key. If you accept the key, it will be regarded as verified.

Related topics:

[Importing Autocrypt keys \(p. 283\)](#)

[Managing Autocrypt keys \(p. 284\)](#)


[Transferring Autocrypt keys to other clients \(p. 285\)](#)

12.3.2 Managing Autocrypt keys

The following options are available:

- Show a list of imported Autocrypt keys
You can verify automatically imported Autocrypt keys later. A verified key will be used as follows:
 - An outgoing message to this contact can be encrypted with this key.
 - The signature of an incoming message from this contact will be verified using the key. If the verification is successful, the sender is real and the message content is unaltered.
- Delete Autocrypt keys


How to display the list of Autocrypt keys:

1. Click the **Settings** icon . Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Security**. Click on **Guard**.
3. Enable **Show advanced settings**. Items for managing keys and for the Autocrypt settings will be displayed.
4. Click on **Autocrypt Keys** below **Keys**. The *Autocrypt Keys* window opens. It displays a list of Autocrypt keys.
To show details, click on a key ID.

How to verify an Autocrypt key in the *Autocrypt Keys* window:

1. Verify a key by comparing its displayed fingerprint with the correct fingerprint. You get the correct fingerprint from the sender of the E-Mail the key was imported from.
2. To verify the key, enable **Verified**.

How to delete an Autocrypt key in the *Autocrypt Keys* window:

1. Click the **Delete** icon .
2. Confirm that you want to delete the key.

Related topics:

[GuardSettings \(p. 295\)](#)


[Importing Autocrypt keys \(p. 283\)](#)

[Transferring Autocrypt keys to other clients \(p. 285\)](#)

12.3.3 Transferring Autocrypt keys to other clients

To decrypt messages received on another E-Mail client and to sign outgoing messages, you have to copy your private keys to the other client. To do so, you can use the Autocrypt transfer service. The Autocrypt transfer service sends you an E-Mail with your private keys. This E-Mail is encrypted with a 36 digit code.

How to transfer your Autocrypt keys to another client:

1. Click the **Settings** icon . Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Security**. Click on **Guard**.
3. Enable **Show advanced settings**. Items for managing keys and for the Autocrypt settings will be displayed.
4. Click on **Autocrypt Transfer Keys** below **Autocrypt**. The *Autocrypt Transfer Keys* window opens.
5. Enter your Guard password. Click on **Transfer**.
A setup E-Mail with a passcode will be sent to your primary E-Mail address. The passcode will be displayed in the *Autocrypt Transfer Keys* window.
6. Open the setup E-Mail on the desired E-Mail client. Enter the passcode.

Related topics:

[Importing Autocrypt keys \(p. 283\)](#)

[Managing Autocrypt keys \(p. 284\)](#)

12.4 Encrypting or Decrypting Files

The following options are available:

- [Encrypting files \(p. 286\)](#)
- [Uploading files securely by using encryption \(p. 287\)](#)
- [Opening encrypted files \(p. 287\)](#)
- [Downloading encrypted files \(p. 287\)](#)
- [Decrypting files \(p. 289\)](#)

User interface:



[The Drive tool bar \(p. 209\)](#)

12.4.1 Encrypting files

When encrypting a file, only the last version of this file will be encrypted. All other versions will be deleted.

How to encrypt a file:

Warning: When encrypting a file, all versions of this file will be deleted, except for the current version. If you need to keep an older version, save it before encrypting the file.

1. Select one or several files in the display area of the Drive app.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click the **Actions** icon . Click on **Encrypt** in the menu.
 - Select **Encrypt** from the context menu.
 - Use the **More actions** icon . Click on **Encrypt** in the menu.

Related topics:

[Uploading files securely by using encryption \(p. 287\)](#)
[Opening encrypted files \(p. 287\)](#)
[Downloading encrypted files \(p. 287\)](#)
[Decrypting files \(p. 289\)](#)

12.4.2 Uploading files securely by using encryption

You can upload local files securely by using encryption.

How to upload files securely by using encryption:

1. In the Drive app, open a folder in the folder view.
Note: Open a folder for which you have the appropriate permissions to create objects.
2. Click on **Upload** in the tool bar. Click on **File (encrypted)**.
3. Select one or several files in the *Upload file* window.
Click on **Open**. The current progress status will be shown in the display area.
In order to cancel the process, click on **File details** at the bottom right side of the display area. Click on **Cancel** next to a file name in the *Upload progress* window.

Tip: You can also upload a new encrypted file by dragging a file from your operating system's desktop to the Drive app window and dropping it in the bottom part.


Related topics:

- [Encrypting files \(p. 286\)](#)
- [Opening encrypted files \(p. 287\)](#)
- [Downloading encrypted files \(p. 287\)](#)
- [Decrypting files \(p. 289\)](#)
- [Uploading Files or Folders \(p. 222\)](#)

12.4.3 Opening encrypted files

You can open and read an encrypted file. The file remains encrypted on the server.

How to open an encrypted file:

1. In the Drive app, select an encrypted file in the display area. Click the **View** icon .
2. Enter your Guard security password in the *Password required* window.
You can define how long the security password should be remembered by Guard. To do so, enable **Remember my password**. Select a value from the list.
In the Guard security settings, you can [define a default value](#) for the time range.
Click on **OK**.



Related topics:

- [Encrypting files \(p. 286\)](#)
- [Uploading files securely by using encryption \(p. 287\)](#)
- [Downloading encrypted files \(p. 287\)](#)
- [Decrypting files \(p. 289\)](#)

12.4.4 Downloading encrypted files

You can download an encrypted file to locally read or edit it. The file remains encrypted on the server.

How to download an encrypted file:

1. In the Drive app, select an encrypted file in the display area. Click the **View** icon .
- Note: If you click on **Download** in the tool bar or context menu instead, the downloaded file remains encrypted.
2. Enter the Guard security password in the *Password required* pop-up window.
You can define how long the security password should be remembered by Guard. To do so, enable **Remember my password**. Select a value from the list.
In the Guard security settings, you can [define a default value](#) for the time range.
Click on **OK**.
3. Click the **More actions** icon . Click on **Download Decrypted**.


Related topics:

- [Encrypting files \(p. 286\)](#)
- [Uploading files securely by using encryption \(p. 287\)](#)
- [Opening encrypted files \(p. 287\)](#)
- [Decrypting files \(p. 289\)](#)

12.4.5 Decrypting files

You can remove a file's encryption by decrypting the file.

How to decrypt a file:

1. In the Drive app, select an encrypted file in the display area.
2. Use one of the following methods:
 - Click the **Actions** icon . Click on **Remove Encryption**.
 - Select **Remove Encryption** from the context menu.
3. Enter the Guard security password in the *Password required* pop-up window.
You can define how long the Guard security password should be valid. To do so, enable **Remember my password**. Select a value from the list.
In the Guard security settings, you can [define a default value](#) for the time range.
Click on **OK**.

Related topics:

[Encrypting files \(p. 286\)](#)

[Uploading files securely by using encryption \(p. 287\)](#)

[Opening encrypted files \(p. 287\)](#)

[Downloading encrypted files \(p. 287\)](#)

12.5 Encrypting Office Documents

The following options are available:

- [Creating new encrypted documents \(p. 291\)](#)
- [Saving selected documents in an encrypted format \(p. 292\)](#)
- [Opening an encrypted document \(p. 293\)](#)

Additional functions are available in the Drive app:

- [encrypt](#) existing documents
- [decrypt](#) documents

12.5.1 Creating new encrypted documents

When creating a new document, you can create a document that will be encrypted.. The following options are available:

- Create an encrypted document in the Text, Spreadsheet or Presentation app.
- Create an encrypted document on the document edit page.
You can use this option if you are currently editing a document.

How to create a new encrypted document:

1. Depending on whether you want to create an encrypted text document, spreadsheet or presentation, launch the Text, Spreadsheet or Presentation app.
2. In the Office menu bar, click on one of the respective buttons **New text document (encrypted)**, **New spreadsheet (encrypted)**, **New presentation (encrypted)**.
3. Enter your Guard security password in the *Password required* window.
You can define how long the security password should be remembered by Guard. To do so, enable **Remember my password**. Select a value from the list.
In the Guard security settings, you can [define a default value](#) for the time range.
Click on **OK**.

How to create a new encrypted document while editing a document:

1. Click on **New** in the **File** tool bar. In the menu, select one of these entries: **Text document (encrypted)**, **Spreadsheet document (encrypted)**, **Presentation document (encrypted)**.
2. Enter your Guard security password in the *Password required* window.
You can define how long the security password should be remembered by Guard. To do so, enable **Remember my password**. Select a value from the list.
In the Guard security settings, you can [define a default value](#) for the time range.
Click on **OK**.
3. Click on **Unnamed** in the menu bar. Enter a name.

Related topics:

- [Saving selected documents in an encrypted format \(p. 292\)](#)
- [Opening an encrypted document \(p. 293\)](#)
- [Encrypting or Decrypting Files \(p. 286\)](#)

12.5.2 Saving selected documents in an encrypted format

When having opened a text document, spreadsheet or a presentation, you can save this document in an encrypted format.

How to save the selected document in an encrypted format:

1. Open a document in the Text, Spreadsheet or Presentation app.
2. In the **File** tool bar, click on **Save in Drive**. Select **Save as (encrypted)**.
The *Save as (encrypted)* window opens. Select a folder and a file name. Click on **OK**.
3. If the *Enter Guard security password* window opens, enter the Guard security password.
You can define how long the security password should be remembered by Guard. To do so, enable **Remember my password**. Select a value from the list.
In the Guard security settings, you can [define a default value](#) for the time range.
Click on **OK**.

Related topics:

[Creating new encrypted documents \(p. 291\)](#)

[Opening an encrypted document \(p. 293\)](#)

[Encrypting or Decrypting Files \(p. 286\)](#)



12.5.3 Opening an encrypted document

You can open an encrypted document to do the following:

- read or edit the document
- download the document in decrypted format
- print the document as a PDF in decrypted format

The document remains encrypted on the server.

How to open an encrypted document:

1. Open a document in the Text, Spreadsheet or Presentation app.
2. Enter your Guard security password in the *Password required* window.
You can define how long the security password should be remembered by Guard. To do so, enable **Remember my password**. Select a value from the list.
In the Guard security settings, you can [define a default value](#) for the time range.
Click on **OK**.
3. You can use the following functions:
 - Edit the document. Information can be found in the Documents user guide.
 - To download the document in a decrypted format, click the **Download** icon .
 - To save the document as a PDF in a decrypted format, click the **Print as PDF** icon .

Related topics:

[Creating new encrypted documents \(p. 291\)](#)

[Saving selected documents in an encrypted format \(p. 292\)](#)

[Encrypting or Decrypting Files \(p. 286\)](#)

12.6 Signing Out from Guard

You can sign out from Guard without closing the groupware. To open an encrypted E-Mail or file after having signed out, you have to re-enter the Guard security password.

Note: This function is only available if you enable **Remember Password** when opening an encrypted E-Mail or file.

How to sign out from Guard:

1. Click the **My account** icon on the right side of the menu bar.
2. Click on **Sign out Guard**.

12.7 GuardSettings

How to use the Guard settings:

1. Click the **Settings** icon . Click on **Settings**.
2. In the side bar, click on **Security**. Click on **Guard**.

The *Guard security settings* page will be displayed.

The following settings are available:

default settings

- **Default to send encrypted when composing e-mail**
Defines whether a new E-Mail is encrypted by default.
- **Default adding signature to outgoing e-mail messages**
Defines whether a new E-Mail is encrypted by default.
- **Default to using PGP inline for new e-mail messages**
Defines whether the PGP encryption is done inline by default. Only use those settings if the E-Mail client of a recipient does not support PGP. With PGP inline, the recipient can decrypt the message regardless. If you use this setting, you can not send E-Mail messages in HTML format.
- **Remember password default**
Defines the time range default for Guard to remember the password. You can change this default when being asked for your Guard password.

Password management

Contains functions for changing or resetting the password

See [Password management \(p. 297\)](#)

Advanced

- **Advanced settings**
If **Show advanced settings** is enabled, the following settings and functions will be available.
 - **E-Mail cache**
Defines whether a decrypted E-Mail is kept in the browser cache in a readable format when displaying another E-Mail or changing to another groupware app.
To remove the decrypted E-Mail from the browser cache, enable **Do not keep e-mail messages decrypted..**
 - **Keys** section
Managing own keys, public keys or Autocrypt keys
See [Keys \(p. 296\)](#)
 - **Autocrypt** section
Configures the usage of Autocrypt for incoming E-Mail Messages. Allows you to transfer Autocrypt keys to other clients.
See [Encrypting E-Mail Conversations with Autocrypt \(p. 282\)](#)
 - When sending encrypted E-Mail Messages, there are additional options available.
See [Sending encrypted E-Mail messages \(p. 280\)](#)

Keys

Usually, the key management functions are not required for sending or receiving encrypted messages. Those functions can be useful though under the following circumstances:

- You want to use your Guard PGP keys in other E-Mail clients, e.g. in local E-Mail clients.
- You have PGP keys from other PGP applications. You want to use those keys in Guard.
- You have an external partner's public key. In order to send encrypted messages to this external partner or verify received signed messages without having to access a key server, you want to import the partner's public key into Guard.
- You want to provide your public key to an external partner in order to allow the external partner to send encrypted messages to you without the need to access a key server.

The following options are available:

- **Download my public key button**
Saves your public key locally.
- **Your keys button**
Opens the *Your Keys* window for managing your [own keys](#).
- **Public keys of recipients button**
Opens the *Your Keys* window for managing [public keys](#).

12.7.1 Password management

On the *Guard security settings* page, you can:

- change the Guard security password
- When having lost your Guard security password, you can request a temporary Guard security password by resetting the Guard security password.
- Defining an E-Mail address for resetting the password.
- To be able to reset your password if needed, your password has to be saved on the server in an encrypted version. If you do not want your password to be saved on the server, you can delete the password recovery.

Note: Depending on the configuration, some of those functions might not be available.

How to change the Guard password:

1. Click on **Change password**. The *Change password* window opens.
2. In the **Enter current Guard security password** field, enter the password that you have used so far for encrypting your data.
In the **Enter new Guard security password** field, enter the password that you want to use for encrypting your data from now on.
Confirm the password in the **Verify new Guard security password** field by entering it again.
3. Click on **Change**.

How to reset the Guard password:

1. Click on **Reset password**. The *Reset password* window opens.
Click on **Reset**.
2. A new password will be sent to your secondary E-Mail address.
If not having entered a secondary E-Mail address, the new password will be sent to your primary E-Mail address.
This new password is now your current Guard security password. You should immediately [change](#) this password.

How to change your secondary E-Mail address for resetting the password:

1. Click on **Set e-mail address for reset**. The *Secondary E-mail Address* window opens.
2. In the **Enter current Guard security password** field, enter the password for encrypting your data.
In the **Enter new secondary e-mail** field, enter the E-Mail address that is used for receiving a temporary password for resetting your Guard security password.
Re-enter the E-Mail address in **Verify e-mail address**.
Click on **Change E-mail address**.

How to remove the function for resetting the password:

Warning: If you remove the function for resetting the password, you can no longer reset your password. If you forget your password afterwards, there will be no possibility to decrypt your encrypted E-Mail messages or files.

1. Enable **Show advanced settings**.
Click on **Delete password recovery**. The *Delete Recovery* window opens.
2. Click the **Delete** button.

Related topics:


[Managing your own keys \(p. 299\)](#)
[Managing public keys \(p. 301\)](#)

12.7.2 Managing your own keys


On the *Guard security settings* page, you can:

- display your own keys, display details
- add new keys
If you own several keys, you can define which key should be the current one. The current key is used for encrypting data.
- add user IDs
When adding additional user IDs to a key, you can use the key for multiple E-Mail accounts.
- download keys
- delete keys


How to display your own keys or make a key the current one:

1. Enable the **Show Advanced Settings** checkbox below **Advanced**.
Click on **Your keys** below *Keys*. The *Your Keys* window opens.
 - Your existing keys are displayed. Each key consists of a master key and a sub-key.
 - Among other things, the master key is used for signing your E-Mail messages.
 - The sub-key is used for encrypting and decrypting E-Mail messages and files.
 - Depending on the requirement, Guard automatically uses the master key or the sub-key.
2. If your key list contains more than one key, you can define the current key. To do so, enable the **Current** checkbox next to the main key. From now on, the current key will be used for encryption.
3. To display details for a key, click the **Details** icon . The *Key Details* window opens. To view the key's signatures, click on **Signatures**.


How to add a new key in the *Your Keys* window:

1. Click the **Add** icon . The *Adding Keys* window opens.
 2. The following options are available:
 - To add a private key, click on **Upload Private Key**. Select a file containing a private key. The *Upload Private Keys* window opens.
To upload the new key, enter your Guard security password. Enter a new password for the new key.
 - To add a public key, click on **Upload Public Key Only**. Select a file containing a public key.
 - To create a new key pair, click on **Create New Keys**. The *Create Guard Security Keys* window opens.
Enter a password for the new key. Confirm the password.
The new key consists of a master key and a corresponding sub-key.
- The new key will be entered on top of your key list. The new key becomes the current key.

How to add an additional user ID in the *Your Keys* window:


1. Click the **Edit** icon . The *Add User ID* window opens.
2. Enter a name for the user ID. Enter the E-Mail address that you want to use for this key.
Enter your password for this key.
Click on **OK**.

How to download a key in the *Your Keys* window:

1. Click the **Download** icon .
2. Define whether to download your private key only, your public key only or both keys.
Caution: Your private key will be downloaded in encrypted form. You should not download your private key to a publicly accessible system, though.

How to delete a key in the *Your Keys* window:

Warning: If you delete a private key, you can no longer decrypt objects that have been encrypted with this key. If you are unsure, you should not delete the key but revoke it. A revoked key can no longer be used for encryption. But you can still decrypt objects that have been encrypted with this key.

1. Click the **Delete** icon . The *Delete Private Key* window opens.
2. The following options are available:
 - To revoke a private key, click on **Revoke**.
if you revoke a key, it will no longer be used. But you can still decrypt objects that have been encrypted with this key. For this reason, revoking a key is better than deleting it.
Enter the password for the private key. If required, select a reason for revoking the key.
Click on **Revoke**.
 - In order to delete a private key, click on **Delete**.
Warning: If you delete a private key, you can no longer decrypt objects that have been encrypted with this key.
Enter the password for the private key.
Click the **Delete** button.

When deleting a master key, the corresponding sub-key will be deleted too.

Related topics:

[Managing public keys \(p. 301\)](#)
[Password management \(p. 297\)](#)

12.7.3 Managing public keys

On the *Guard security settings* page, you can:

- display public keys
- upload public keys
- delete your own public key

How to show public keys:

1. Enable the **Show advanced settings** checkbox below **Advanced**.


Click on **Public keys of recipients** below **Keys**. The *Public Keys* window opens.

The public keys shared by you or other users are displayed. If a user's public key is displayed in this list, you can send an encrypted E-Mail to this user and verify signed E-Mail messages that have been sent to you by this user.

2. To display details for a key, click the **Details** icon . The *Public Keys Detail* window opens.

You can share public keys by enabling **Share key**. Other users can view and download your shared keys. Public keys are only available for groupware users.

How to upload a recipient's public key in the *Public Keys* window:

Click the **Add** icon . Select a file containing a public key.

How to delete a public key in the *Public Keys* window:

Click the **Delete** icon .

Confirm that you want to delete the public key.

Related topics:

[Managing your own keys \(p. 299\)](#)

[Password management \(p. 297\)](#)

Index

A

Account

- add E-Mail accounts, 97
- add storage accounts, 235
- definition, 13
- edit, 260
- edit the primary E-Mail account, 259
- remove, 260
- set up social networks, 52
- view, 260

Add as XING contact, 126

Add storage accounts, 235

Address Book , 101

- Components, 102

Address book

- add personal address books, 121
- invite contact to appointment, 125
- send E-Mail messages, 125
- settings, 131

Address book settings

- Display of names, 131
- initial folder, 131
- Link postal addresses with map service, 131
- My contact data, 131
- subscribe to shared address books, 131

Address Book-User interface

- Detail view, 106
- Display area, 105
- distribution list editing window, 108
- editing window, 107
- folder view, 104
- List, 105
- Navigation bar, 104
- Tool bar, 103

Addresses

- collect, 81
- select from address book, 68

An appointment's color, 147

App

- Address Book , 101
- Calendar , 133
- definition, 13
- Drive , 207
- E-Mail , 55
- install local apps, 42
- set up local apps with a wizard, 43
- Tasks , 183

Appointments

- add participants or resources, 156
- Adding attachments, 157
- answer invitations, 162
- call appointment participants, 164
- change reminder, 171
- change status, 170
- change the organiser, 171
- change time or duration, 163
- changing status, 170
- colours, 147
- create, 151
- create a follow-up appointment, 158

create from iCal, 160

delete, 176

display in calendar view, 145, 147

display in list view, 148

display time zones, multiple -, 146

edit, 163

export, 174

finding free times, 158

import, 172

invite E-Mail recipients to new appointments, 160

invite from address book, 125

Inviting participants to a new appointment, 159

manage, 169

manage favourite time zones, 172

move to another calendar, 172

print, 175

reschedule to another day, 163

resolve conflicts, 161

save attachment, 149

schedule audio/video conference, 153

search, 177

set an appointment's display, 155

set recurring appointments, 154

use appointment reminders, 155

use calendar colours, 172

use the date picker, 152

use the scheduling view, 158

view, 144

view attachment, 149

archive E-Mail messages, 85

Autocrypt

delete keys, 284

import keys, 283

show keys, 284

transfer keys to other clients, 285

verify keys, 284

Automatic sign out, 264

B

Basic settings, 35, 36

Automatic opening of notification area, 36

change the password, 36

Default application after sign in, 36

Design, 36

Language, 36

more regional settings, 36

My contact data, 36

quick launch, 36

Refresh interval, 36

Show desktop notifications, 36

Signing out Automatically, 36

Time zone, 36

C

Calendar , 133

add calendars, 165

add personal calendars, 166

Components, 134

Date picker, 139

import, 168

mini calendar, 136

share, see sharing, 245

subscribe to external calendars, 167

- subscribe to Google calendars, 167
- subscribe to iCal calendars, 167
- subscribe to public and shared calendars, 168
- use calendar colours, 172
- use the scheduling view, 158
- Calendar settings
 - Automatically delete the invitation e-mail after the appointment has been accepted or declined, 180
 - Birthday calendar, 180
 - calendar work week view, 180
 - Display refused appointments, 180
 - End of working time, 180
 - participants can edit appointments, 180
 - Receive notification as appointment creator when participants accept or decline, 180
 - Receive notification as appointment participant when other participants accept or decline, 180
 - Receive notifications when an appointment in which you participate is created, modified or deleted, 180
 - reminders, 181
 - Start of working time, 180
 - subscribe to iCal calendars, 180
 - time scale, 180
- Calendar-User interface
 - calendar view, 138
 - Date picker, 139
 - Detail view, 141
 - Display area, 137
 - editing window, 143
 - folder view, 137
 - List, 140
 - mini calendar, 136
 - Pop-up, 140
 - Scheduling view, 142
 - Tool bar, 135
- Call
 - appointment participants, 164
 - contacts, 119
 - sender or another recipient, 76
 - task participants, 197
- Change the appointment organiser, 171
- Cloud storage
 - see add storage accounts, 235
- Compose E-Mail, 67
- Contacts
 - add address books, 120
 - add as XING contact, 126
 - add from vCard, 114
 - Adding attachments, 114
 - call, 119
 - copy, 125
 - create, 113
 - create a distribution list from the list of participants, 117
 - create contact picture, 113
 - create distribution lists, 115
 - create new distribution lists, 116
 - delete, 129
 - display, 109
 - displaying the halo view, 111
 - edit, 118
 - export, 128
 - importing in CSV format, 127
 - importing in vCard format, 127
 - invite to appointment, 125
 - invite to XING, 126
 - manage, 124
 - move, 125
 - print, 128
 - refresh and manage subscribed address books, 122
 - save attachment, 110
 - save E-Mail recipients as distribution list, 117
 - search, 130
 - select from address book, 68
 - send as vCard, 125
 - send E-Mail messages to, 125
 - share, see sharing, 245
 - subscribe to external address books, 121
 - subscribe to public and shared address books, 123
 - view attachment, 110
- Context menu
 - Drive-display area, 212
 - E-Mail-list, 60
 - folder view, 25
- Copy
 - contacts, 125
 - E-Mail Messages, 80
 - Files, 227
- Create a follow-up appointment, 158
- Create E-Mail reminders, 83
- CSV
 - export, 128
 - import, 127
- D**
- Date picker, 139
- Default group
 - see group, 13
 - see users, 14
- Definitions, 13
- delete
 - account, 260
 - Appointments, 176
 - Contacts, 129
 - email, 86
 - Files, 229
 - folder, 244
 - Tasks, 203
- Desktop notifications, 40
- Display contents
 - Files, 216
 - Presentations, 217
- Display or sign out from active clients, 268
- Distribution list
 - add, 115
 - create from the list of participants, 117
 - definition, 13
 - invite to appointment, 125
 - send E-Mail messages to, 125
- distribution list
 - edit, 118
- Documentation, 11
 - Content, 12
 - target group, 12
- Domain, definition, 13
- Download data, 261
- Download personal data, 261

- Drive , 207
 - add folder, 220
 - Adding files or folders, 229
 - Adding files or folders to Favorites, 228
 - Adding files to the Portal, 228
 - Components, 208
 - Copying files, 227
 - create folders, 221
 - create or edit text files, 223
 - Creating or editing descriptions, 226
 - display a file's content, 216
 - display E-Mail attachments, 217
 - download files or folder contents, 219
 - Locking or unlocking files, 230
 - Moving files or folders, 226
 - Organising files and folders, 224
 - Saving files as PDF, 227
 - search for files, 232
 - Sending files as E-Mail attachments, 225
 - subscribe to public and shared Drive folders, 221
 - upload files, 222
 - upload folders, 222
 - Viewing files, 215
 - Working with versions, 231
 - Drive-User interface
 - Display area, 212
 - file details, 213
 - folder view, 210
 - Navigation bar, 211
 - Tool bar, 209
 - Viewer, 214
 - DriveSettings
 - add files with identical names, 236
 - default view, 236
 - Slideshow / Autoplay mode for images, 236
 - version history, 236
- ## E
- E-Mail , 55
 - Components, 56
 - delete Autocrypt keys, 284
 - display attachments, 217
 - encrypt incoming E-Mail messages, 281
 - import Autocrypt keys, 283
 - read encrypted E-Mail messages, 279
 - send encrypted E-Mail messages, 280
 - send from address book, 125
 - share, *see* sharing, 245
 - show authenticity, 266
 - show Autocrypt keys, 284
 - transfer Autocrypt keys, 285
 - use whitelist, 267
 - verify Autocrypt keys, 284
 - E-Mail filters, 89
 - add action, 92
 - add condition, 91
 - apply a rule to existing E-Mail messages, 94
 - change rules, 93
 - condition examples, 91
 - create new rule when moving, 92
 - create new rules for the subject and the sender, 93
 - create rule, 90
 - encrypt incoming E-Mail messages, 281
 - E-Mail tabs
 - definition, 14
 - working with, 79
 - E-Mail thread, definition, 13
 - E-Mail, *see* E-Mail, 55
 - E-Mail-User interface
 - Categories bar, 59
 - Detail view, 61
 - Display area, 59
 - editing window, 63
 - folder view, 58
 - List, 60
 - Pop-up, 62
 - Tool bar, 57
 - Edit
 - account, 260
 - Appointments, 163
 - Contacts, 118
 - distribution list, 118
 - file description, 226
 - Tasks, 196
 - text file, 223
 - versions, 231
 - Elements, definition, 13
 - email
 - add E-Mail accounts, 97
 - add folder, 77
 - add to portal, 83
 - Adding attachments, 70
 - archive, 85
 - assign colour, 81
 - automatically forward, 74
 - call the sender or another recipient, 76
 - categorise, 81
 - clean up folders, 87
 - Collecting addresses, 81
 - copy, 80
 - create reminder, 83
 - delete, 86
 - display, 64
 - filters, 89
 - forward, 73
 - import from EML, 84
 - manage, 78
 - mark as read, 80
 - mark as unread, 80
 - mark folder as read, 80
 - move, 80
 - notification sounds, 99
 - print, 84
 - reply, 73
 - save as EML, 83
 - save attachment, 65
 - search, 95
 - select contacts from an address book, 68
 - Selecting sender address, 69
 - send, 67
 - send a vacation notice, 75
 - send to appointment participants, 74
 - Sending attachments as a link, 71
 - show E-Mail source, 82
 - tabs, 79
 - Unified Mail, 88
 - use draft, 82

- use signatures, 71
 - view attachment, 65
 - Email settings
 - advanced settings, 100
 - Allow HTML formatted email messages?, 99
 - append vCard, 100
 - Ask for mailto link registration, 99
 - auto-forward, 99
 - Automatically collect contacts while reading, 99
 - Automatically collect contacts while sending, 99
 - automatically send E-Mail messages to BCC, 100
 - Colour quoted lines, 99
 - Confirm recipients when replying to a mailing list, 100
 - default font style, 100
 - default sender address, 100
 - Fixed-width font, 99
 - format email messages as, 100
 - Forward E-mail messages as, 100
 - IMAP folder subscription, 99
 - Insert the original email text into a reply?, 100
 - notification sounds, 99
 - Permanently remove deleted e-mail messages, 99
 - Show folder with all unseen messages, 99
 - Show requests for read receipts, 99
 - vacation notice, 99
 - Encrypt
 - create new encrypted documents, 291
 - create new encrypted files, 287
 - E-Mail Messages, 279
 - E-Mail Messages with Autocrypt, 282
 - encrypt Office documents, 290
 - Files, 286
 - save selected documents in an encrypted format, 292
 - Encrypt Office documents, 290
 - Encrypted document
 - open, 293
 - remove key, see decrypt files, 289
 - Encrypted E-Mail messages
 - read, 279
 - send, 280
 - Encrypted files
 - download, 287
 - open, 287
 - remove key, 289
 - Export
 - Appointments, 174
 - Contacts, 128
 - Tasks, 203
 - External E-Mail account
 - assign folders, 259
 - change name, 259
 - change sender name, 259
 - External participant, definition, 13
 - Externally linked images in E-Mail Messages, 265
- F**
- favourites
 - add files or Drive folders, 228
 - Favourite time zones, 172
 - folder favourites, 243
 - File
 - access with WebDAV, 233
 - add favourites, 228
 - add to portal, 228
 - copy, 227
 - create description, 226
 - create encrypted files, 287
 - decrypt files, 289
 - delete, 229
 - display, 215
 - display E-Mail attachments, 217
 - display in viewer, 216
 - download, 219
 - download encrypted files, 287
 - edit description, 226
 - editing versions, 231
 - encrypt, 286
 - lock, 230
 - manage, 224
 - move, 226
 - open encrypted files, 287
 - rename file, 225
 - save as PDF, 227
 - search, 232
 - send as E-Mail attachment, 225
 - share, see sharing, 245
 - unlock, 230
 - upload, 222
 - WebDAV under Linux, 234
 - WebDAV under Windows, 234
 - First Steps, 15
 - Folder
 - subscribe to E-Mail folders, 252
 - Folder structure
 - favourites, 243
 - hide folders, 242
 - navigate, 241
 - folder view
 - change width, 241
 - favourites, 243
 - hide folders, 242
 - open, 241
 - Folder, definition, 13
 - Folders, 238
 - add favourites, 228
 - add folders to favourites, 243
 - clean up, 87
 - delete, 244
 - download contents, 219
 - hide, 242
 - move, 244
 - navigate in folder structure, 241
 - open, 241
 - Permissions, 240
 - personal folders, 239
 - public folders, 239
 - Rename, 243
 - share, see sharing, 245
 - shared folders, 239
 - type, 239
 - upload, 222
 - Forward E-Mail messages, 73

G

- Global address book, definition, 13
- Groups
 - definition, 13
 - manage, 178
- Groupware, definition, 14
- Guard , 277
 - change password, 297
 - create new encrypted documents, 291
 - create new encrypted files, 287
 - decrypt encrypted files, 289
 - delete Autocrypt keys, 284
 - download encrypted files, 287
 - E-Mail encryption, 279
 - encrypt E-Mail Messages with Autocrypt, 282
 - encrypt incoming E-Mail messages, 281
 - file encryption, 286
 - import Autocrypt keys, 283
 - manage public keys, 301
 - manage your own keys, 299
 - Office document encryption, 290
 - open encrypted documents, 293
 - open encrypted files, 287
 - password management, 297
 - read encrypted E-Mail messages, 279
 - Reset the password, 297
 - save selected documents in an encrypted format, 292
 - send encrypted E-Mail messages, 280
 - set up, 278
 - Settings, 295
 - show Autocrypt keys, 284
 - sign out, 294
 - transfer Autocrypt keys to other clients, 285
 - verify Autocrypt keys, 284
- GuardSecurity settings
 - advanced settings, 295
 - Default adding signature to outgoing e-mail messages, 295
 - Default to send encrypted when composing e-mail, 295
 - Default to using PGP inline for new e-mail messages, 295
 - download public key, 296
 - public keys, 296
 - Remember password default, 295
 - Your Keys, 296
- Guest group
 - see guest, 14
- Guest, definition, 14

H

halo view, 111

I

- iCal
 - export, appointments, 174
 - export, task, 203
 - import, appointments, 172
 - import, task, 202
- import
 - Appointments, 172

- Calendar, 168
 - contacts in CSV format, 127
 - contacts in vCard format, 127
 - email, 84
 - Tasks, 202
- Internal E-Mail account, definition, 14

K

- Keyboard input, 30
 - interact with the user interface, 32
 - keys and key combinations, 31
 - use cases, 33

L

- Lock files, 230
- Login
 - recover verification, 275
 - verify with authenticator app, 273
 - verify with security key, 273
 - verify with SMS code, 274

M

- manage
 - Appointments, 169
 - contacts, 124
 - E-Mail Messages, 78
 - Tasks, 200
- Manage accounts, 258
- Manage verification methods, 276
- Mini calendar, 136
- Mobile devices
 - usage, 34
- Multi-factor authentication, 270
 - manage verification methods, 276
 - set up verification methods, 271

N

- New
 - address book, 120
 - appointments, 151
 - Calendar, 165
 - contact, 113
 - create encrypted documents, 291
 - create encrypted files, 287
 - distribution list, 115
 - Drivefolders, 220, 221
 - email, 67
 - email folders, 77
 - personal address book, 121
 - personal calendars, 166
 - personal task folder, 199
 - send encrypted E-Mail messages, 280
 - task, 193
 - task folder, 198
 - text files, 223
- Notification area, 40
- Notifications
 - receive desktop notifications, 40
 - receive notifications in the notification area, 40

O

Objects, definition, 14

P

Participant, definition, 14

Password

- additional passwords for applications, 269
- change, 19
- Guard change password, 297
- Guard Reset the password, 297

PDF, save files as, 227

Permission examples, 256

Permissions

- Administrator, 254
- application, 254
- Author, 254
- definition, 240
- Examples, 256
- Reviewer, 254
- viewer, 254

personal contact data, 39

personal contact picture, 39

Picture

- create contact picture, 113
- create personal contact picture, 39

Portal , 47

- add E-Mail messages, 83
- add file, 228
- Components, 48
- customise, 51

Portal settings

- add widget, 54
- colour, 54
- Delete, 54
- disable, 54
- Edit button, 54
- edit widgets, 54
- Enable, 54
- Move icon, 54
- reduce to widget summary, 54

Portal widgets

- add, 52
- change order, 52
- remove, 52
- set up social networks, 52

Presentations

- hold, 217

Print

- Appointments, 175
- Contacts, 128
- email, 84
- list of appointments, 175
- Tasks, 203

print

- calendar sheet, 175

R

Regional settings, 38

Reminders, 181

Rename

- Files, 225
- folder, 243

Reschedule

- appointments to another day, 163
- appointments to other calendars, 172
- Contacts, 125
- E-Mail Messages, 80
- files or Drive folders, 226
- folder, 244
- Tasks, 201

Resource

- definition, 14
- manage, 179

S

Save

- E-Mail draft, 82
- email, 83

Schedule audio/video conference, 153

Schedule conference, audio/video, 153

Search

- Appointments, 177
- contacts, 130
- E-Mail Messages, 95
- Files, 232
- Tasks, 204

Security

- Automatic sign out, 264
- Display or sign out from active clients, 268
- E-Mail encryption with Autocrypt, 282
- encrypt E-Mail messages, 279
- encrypt Office documents, 290
- encrypt or decrypt files, 286
- externally linked images in E-Mail messages, 265
- GuardSettings, 295
- multi-factor authentication, 270
- Showing the E-Mail Authenticity, 266
- use a whitelist, 267
- use additional passwords for applications, 269

Sending

- contacts as vCard, 125
- email, 67

Session

- definition, 14

Set the presence status, 46

Set up verification methods, 271

Settings

- Accounts, 258
- address book, 131
- Basic settings, 36
- Calendar, 180
- change password, 19
- configure Zoom integration, 44
- download personal data, 261
- Drive , 236
- E-Mail messages, receive, 99, 100
- email, 98
- Guard , 295
- install local apps, 42
- personal contact data, 39
- Portal, 54
- Regional settings, 38
- set the presence status, 46
- set up local apps with a wizard, 43
- set up Zoom integration, 44

- Tasks, 205
 - Share data, 246
 - Sharing, 245
 - Access other users' shares, 253
 - add person, 247
 - edit, 247
 - edit in the Drive app, 251
 - remove, 250
 - resend an invitation, 249
 - share data, 246
 - subscribe to E-Mail folders, 252
 - subscribe to public and shared address books, 123
 - subscribe to public and shared calendars, 168
 - subscribe to public and shared Drive folders, 221
 - subscribe to public and shared task folders, 199
 - view in the Drive app, 251
 - Show birthday calendar, 180
 - Sign in, sign out, 18
 - sign out automatically, 264
 - Subscribe
 - address book, 121
 - Calendar, 167
 - E-Mail folders, 252
 - Google calendar, 167
 - iCal calendars, 167
 - messages from social networks, 52
 - refresh address books, 122
 - subscribe to RSS feeds, 52
 - Subscribe to RSS feeds, 52
- T**
- Tabs
 - definition, 14
 - working with tabs, 79
 - Task settings
 - Receive notifications when a participant accepted or declined a task created by you, 205
 - Receive notifications when a participant accepted or declined a task in which you participate, 205
 - Receive notifications when a task in which you participate is created, modified or deleted, 205
 - subscribe to shared task folders, 205
 - Tasks , 183
 - add participant, 194
 - add personal task folder, 199
 - add task folder, 198
 - Adding attachments, 194
 - answer invitations, 195
 - call task participants, 197
 - change due date, 201
 - changing status, 202
 - Components, 184
 - create, 193
 - create recurring task, 194
 - delete, 203
 - display, 190
 - edit, 196
 - export, 203
 - import, 202
 - manage, 200
 - mark as done, 201
 - move, 201
 - print, 203
 - save attachment, 191
 - search, 204
 - share, see sharing, 245
 - subscribe to public and shared task folders, 199
 - view attachment, 191
 - Tasks-User interface
 - Detail view, 188
 - Display area, 186
 - editing window, 189
 - folder view, 186
 - List, 187
 - Tool bar, 185
 - Terminology, 13
 - Text file
 - edit, 223
 - Text files
 - create, 223
 - Time zone
 - display multiple time zones, 146
 - manage favourite time zones, 172
- U**
- Unified Mail, 88
 - Unlock files, 230
 - Upload
 - file or folder, 222
 - Usage on Mobile Devices, 34
 - Use the scheduling view, 158
 - User interface
 - App Launcher, 22
 - definition, 14
 - Display area, 26
 - editing window, 29
 - folder view, 25
 - general description, 20
 - halo view, 27
 - Keyboard input, 30, 31, 32
 - Menu bar, 21
 - notification area, 28
 - Pop-up, 27
 - search bar, 23
 - Tool bar, 24
 - User, definition, 14
- V**
- Vacation notice, 75
 - vCard
 - export, 128
 - import, 127
 - send, 125
 - View
 - Accounts, 260
 - appointment attachment, 149
 - Appointments, 144, 145, 148
 - contact attachment, 110
 - Contacts, 109
 - E-Mail Messages, 64
 - email attachment, 65
 - Files, 215
 - files in the viewer, 216
 - task attachment, 191
 - Tasks, 190
 - Viewer, 214

W

Web address

see domain, 13

WebDAV

accessing files, 233

definition, 233

set up under Linux, 234

set up under Windows, 234

Whitelist

definition, 14

use, 267

X

XING

add as XING contact, 126

add widget, 52

create a XING account, 53

invite to XING, 126

Z

Zoom

call appointment participants, 164

call task participants, 197

call the sender or another recipient, 76

Calling Contacts, 119

configure integration, 44

schedule audio/video conference, 153

set up integration, 44

Zoom settings

Always add a random meeting password, 45

Automatically copy link to location, 45

Copy dial-in information to description, 45

Play ringtone on incoming call, 45

Show desktop notifications, 45